



# Government Gazette Staatskoerant

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA  
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID AFRIKA

Vol. 654

6 December 2019  
Desember

No. 42887

**PART 1 OF 2**

N.B. The Government Printing Works will not be held responsible for the quality of "Hard Copies" or "Electronic Files" submitted for publication purposes

ISSN 1682-5843



**AIDS HELPLINE: 0800-0123-22 Prevention is the cure**

**IMPORTANT NOTICE OF OFFICE RELOCATION****government  
printing**Department:  
Government Printing Works  
**REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA**Private Bag X85, PRETORIA, 0001 149 Bosman Street, PRETORIA  
Tel: 012 748 6197, Website: [www.gpwonline.co.za](http://www.gpwonline.co.za)**URGENT NOTICE TO OUR VALUED CUSTOMERS: PUBLICATIONS  
OFFICE'S RELOCATION HAS BEEN TEMPORARILY SUSPENDED.**

Please be advised that the GPW Publications office will no longer move to 88 Visagie Street as indicated in the previous notices.

The move has been suspended due to the fact that the new building in 88 Visagie Street is not ready for occupation yet.

We will later on issue another notice informing you of the new date of relocation.

We are doing everything possible to ensure that our service to you is not disrupted.

As things stand, we will continue providing you with our normal service from the current location at 196 Paul Kruger Street, Masada building.

Customers who seek further information and or have any questions or concerns are free to contact us through telephone 012 748 6066 or email Ms Maureen Toka at [Maureen.Toka@gpw.gov.za](mailto:Maureen.Toka@gpw.gov.za) or cell phone at 082 859 4910.

Please note that you will still be able to download gazettes free of charge from our website [www.gpwonline.co.za](http://www.gpwonline.co.za).

We apologies for any inconvenience this might have caused.

Issued by GPW Communications



For purposes of reference, all Proclamations, Government Notices, General Notices and Board Notices published are included in the following table of contents which thus forms a weekly index. Let yourself be guided by the gazette numbers in the righthand column:

### Weekly Index

No.	Page No.	Gazette No.
<b>GOVERNMENT NOTICE</b>		
<b>Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, Department of</b>		
1491 Plant Breeders' Rights Act (15/1976) :Plant Variety Journal.....	19	42849
1492 Agricultural Product Standards Act (119/1990) :Notice of intent to cancel cer- tain Karoo Quality Indication Marks.....	32	42849
R.1510 Agricultural Product Standards Act (119/1990) :Regulations relating to the classification, packing and marking of dairy products and imitation dairy prod- ucts intended for sale in the Republic of South Africa .....	14	42850
R.1511 Agricultural Pests Act (36/1983) :Control measures relating to Honey-Bees.....	62	42850
R.1512 Agricultural Product Standards Act (119/1990) :Regulations relating to the grading, packing and marking of peaches and nectarines intended for sale in the Re- public of South Africa.....	66	42850
<b>Arts and Culture, Department of</b>		
1493 National Heritage Resources Act (25/1999) :Declaration of the June 16 Soweto Route, Orlando West, Soweto, Gauteng as a Na- tional Heritage Site .....	33	42849
1494 National Heritage Resources Act (25/1999) :Declaration of the Walter Sisulu Square of Dedication, Kliptown, Soweto, Gauteng as a National Heritage Site.....	36	42849
<b>Defence and Military Veterans, Department of</b>		
1495 Central Procurement Service Centre :No- tice of Relocation .....	38	42849
<b>Economic Development Department</b>		
1553 Competition Act (89/1998), as amended :Completion of the Grocery Retail Market Inquiry November 2019.....	4	42869
<b>Environmental Affairs, Department of</b>		
1496 National Environmental Management Act (107/1998) :Consultation on intention to amend the Environmental Impact Assess- ment Regulations, 2014, as amended .....	39	42849
1526 South African Weather Services Act (8/2001) :Regulations regarding fees for the provision of the Aviation Meteorologi- cal Services, 2019.....	4	42855

Alle Proklamasies, Goewermentskennisgewings, Algemene Kennisgewings en Raadskennisgewings gepubliseer, word vir verwysingsdoeleindes in die volgende Inhoudopgawe ingesluit wat dus weeklikse indeks voorstel. Laat uself deur die Koerant-nommers in die regterhandse kolom lei:

### Weeklikse Indeks

No.	Bladsy No.	Koerant No.
<b>GOEWERMENTSKENNISGEWINGS</b>		
<b>Landbou, Bosbou en Visserye, Departement van</b>		
1491 Plant Breeders' Rights Act (15/1976) :Plant Variety Journal.....	19	42849
1492 Agricultural Product Standards Act (119/1990) :Notice of intent to cancel cer- tain Karoo Quality Indication Marks.....	32	42849
R.1510 Agricultural Product Standards Act (119/1990) :Regulations relating to the classification, packing and marking of dairy products and imitation dairy prod- ucts intended for sale in the Republic of South Africa .....	14	42850
R.1511 Agricultural Pests Act (36/1983) :Control measures relating to Honey-Bees.....	62	42850
R.1512 Agricultural Product Standards Act (119/1990) :Regulations relating to the grading, packing and marking of peaches and nectarines intended for sale in the Re- public of South Africa.....	66	42850
<b>Kuns en Kultuur, Departement van</b>		
1493 National Heritage Resources Act (25/1999) :Declaration of the June 16 Soweto Route, Orlando West, Soweto, Gauteng as a National Heritage Site .....	33	42849
1494 National Heritage Resources Act (25/1999) :Declaration of the Walter Sisulu Square of Dedication, Kliptown, Soweto, Gauteng as a National Heritage Site .....	36	42849
<b>Verdediging en Militêre Veterane, Departement van</b>		
1495 Central Procurement Service Centre :No- tice of Relocation .....	38	42849
<b>Ekonomiese Ontwikkeling Departement</b>		
1553 Competition Act (89/1998), as amended :Completion of the Grocery Retail Market Inquiry November 2019.....	4	42869
<b>Omgewingsake, Departement van</b>		
1496 National Environmental Management Act (107/1998) :Consultation on intention to amend the Environmental Impact Assess- ment Regulations, 2014, as amended .....	39	42849
1526 South African Weather Services Act (8/2001) :Regulations regarding fees for the provision of the Aviation Meteorologi- cal Services, 2019.....	4	42855

No.	Page No.	Gazette No.	No.	Page No.	Gazette No.
<b>Health, Department of</b>			<b>Gesondheid, Departement van</b>		
1497 Nursing Act (33/2005) :Regulations relating to the approval of and the minimum requirements for the education and training of a learner leading to registration in the category midwife.....	41	42849	1497 Nursing Act (33/2005) :Regulations relating to the approval of and the minimum requirements for the education and training of a learner leading to registration in the category midwife.....	41	42849
<b>Labour, Department of</b>			<b>Arbeid, Departement van</b>		
R.1513 Labour Relations Act, 1995 :Building Industry Bargaining Council (Cape of Good Hope): Extension of main amending collective agreement to non-parties .....	79	42850	R.1513 Labour Relations Act, 1995 :Building Industry Bargaining Council (Cape of Good Hope): Extension of main amending collective agreement to non-parties .....	79	42850
1528 Labour Relations Act, 1995 :Notice of Intention to cancel the Registration of Trade Union .....	4	42859	1528 Labour Relations Act, 1995 :Notice of Intention to cancel the Registration of Trade Union .....	4	42859
<b>Mineral Resources, Department of</b>			<b>Minerale Bronne, Departement van</b>		
R.1554 Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Regulations, 2019 :Publication of Draft Amendments to the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Regulations, 2019 for Public Comment .....	4	42870	R.1554 Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Regulations, 2019 :Publication of Draft Amendments to the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Regulations, 2019 for Public Comment .....	4	42870
<b>Police, Department of</b>			<b>Polisie, Departement van</b>		
1527 Firearms Control Act (60/2000) :Declaration of an amnesty in terms of section 139 of the Act.....	4	42858	1527 Firearms Control Act (60/2000) :Declaration of an amnesty in terms of section 139 of the Act.....	4	42858
<b>Public Works, Department of</b>			<b>Openbare Werke, Departement van</b>		
1498 National Department of Public Works and Infrastructure (DPWI) :Invitation to attend bid adjudication committee sessions of the National Department of Public Works and Infrastructure .....	50	42849	1498 National Department of Public Works and Infrastructure (DPWI) :Invitation to attend bid adjudication committee sessions of the National Department of Public Works and Infrastructure .....	50	42849
1499 National Department of Public Works and Infrastructure (DPWI) :Invitation to attend Bid Adjudication Committee sessions of the National Department of Public Works and Infrastructure .....	51	42849	1499 National Department of Public Works and Infrastructure (DPWI) :Invitation to attend Bid Adjudication Committee sessions of the National Department of Public Works and Infrastructure .....	51	42849
<b>Rural Development and Land Reform, Department of</b>			<b>Landelike Ontwikkeling en Grondhervorming, Departement van</b>		
1500 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) as amended :Brandspruit 318 IS .....	52	42849	1500 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) as amended :Brandspruit 318 IS .....	52	42849
1501 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) as amended :Various properties.....	53	42849	1501 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) as amended :Various properties.....	53	42849
1502 Land Reform (Labour Tenants) Act (3/1996) :Section 17 Notices for Amajuba District Municipality.....	59	42849	1502 Land Reform (Labour Tenants) Act (3/1996) :Section 17 Notices for Amajuba District Municipality.....	59	42849
<b>Social Development, Department of</b>			<b>Maatskaplike Ontwikkeling, Departement van</b>		
1503 Social Service Professions Act (110/1978) :Request for nominations of a person versed in law to be appointed by the Minister of Social Development as a member of the South African Council for Social Service Professions.....	70	42849	1503 Social Service Professions Act (110/1978) :Request for nominations of a person versed in law to be appointed by the Minister of Social Development as a member of the South African Council for Social Service Professions.....	70	42849
1504 Social Service Professions Act (110/1978) :Request for nominations of a person by community to be appointed by the Minister of Social Development as a Member of the South African Council for Social Service Professions .....	72	42849	1504 Social Service Professions Act (110/1978) :Request for nominations of a person by community to be appointed by the Minister of Social Development as a Member of the South African Council for Social Service Professions.....	72	42849

No.	Page No.	Gazette No.	No.	Page No.	Gazette No.
1505 Social Service Professions Act (110/1978) :Request for nominations of a person Versed in Law to be appointed by the Min- ister of Social Development as a Member of the South African Council for Social Service Professions .....	74	42849	1505 Social Service Professions Act (110/1978) :Request for nominations of a person Versed in Law to be appointed by the Min- ister of Social Development as a Member of the South African Council for Social Service Professions .....	74	42849
<b>South African Revenue Service</b>			<b>Suid-Afrikaanse Inkomstediens</b>		
R.1514 Customs and Excise Act, 1964 :Amend- ment of Schedule No. 1 (No. 1/1/1631).....	175	42850	R.1514 Customs and Excise Act, 1964 :Amend- ment of Schedule No. 1 (No. 1/1/1631).....	179	42850
R.1515 Customs and Excise Act, 1964 :Amend- ment of Schedule No. 1 (No. 1/1/1632).....	183	42850	R.1515 Doeane- en Aksynswet, 1964 :Wysiging van Bylae No. 1 (No. 1/1/1632) .....	185	42850
R.1516 Doeane- en Aksynswet, 1964 :Wysiging van Bylae No. 1 (No. 1/1/1633) .....	187	42850	R.1516 Doeane- en Aksynswet, 1964 :Wysiging van Bylae No. 1 (No. 1/1/1633) .....	190	42850
R.1517 Doeane- en Aksynswet, 1964 :Wysiging van Bylae No. 1 (No. 1/1/1634) .....	193	42850	R.1517 Doeane- en Aksynswet, 1964 :Wysiging van Bylae No. 1 (No. 1/1/1634) .....	194	42850
R.1518 Customs and Excise Act, 1964 :Amend- ment of Schedule No. 4 (No. 4/368).....	195	42850	R.1518 Customs and Excise Act, 1964 :Amend- ment of Schedule No. 4 (No. 4/368).....	196	42850
R.1519 Customs and Excise Act, 1964 :Amend- ment of Schedule No. 4 (No. 4/1/378).....	197	42850	R.1519 Doeane- en Aksynswet, 1964 :Wysiging van Bylae No. 4 (No. 4/1/378) .....	198	42850
R.1520 Doeane- en Aksynswet, 1964 :Wysiging van Bylae No. 5 (No. 5/3/112).....	199	42850	R.1520 Doeane- en Aksynswet, 1964 :Wysiging van Bylae No. 5 (No. 5/3/112).....	200	42850
R.1521 Doeane- en Aksynswet, 1964 :Wysiging van Bylae No. 6 (No. 6/3/50) .....	201	42850	R.1521 Doeane- en Aksynswet, 1964 :Wysiging van Bylae No. 6 (No. 6/3/50) .....	202	42850
R.1522 Doeane- en Aksynswet, 1964 :Wysiging van Bylae No. 4 (No. 4/2/398) .....	203	42850	R.1522 Doeane- en Aksynswet, 1964 :Wysiging van Bylae No. 4 (No. 4/2/398) .....	205	42850
R.1523 Customs and Excise Act, 1964 :Amend- ment of Schedule No. 1 (No. 1/1/1630).....	207	42850	R.1523 Customs and Excise Act, 1964 :Amend- ment of Schedule No. 1 (No. 1/1/1630).....	208	42850
R.1524 Customs and Excise Act, 1964 :Amend- ment of Schedule No. 1 (No. 1/2B/168) ....	209	42850	R.1524 Customs and Excise Act, 1964 :Amend- ment of Schedule No. 1 (No. 1/2B/168) ....	210	42850
<b>Trade and Industry, Department of</b>			<b>Handel en Nywerheid, Departement van</b>		
1506 Co-operatives Act, 2005, as amended :Co-operatives to be struck off the register	76	42849	1506 Co-operatives Act, 2005, as amended :Co-operatives to be struck off the regis- ter .....	76	42849
1507 Co-operatives Act, 2005, as amended :Co-operatives to be struck off the register	77	42849	1507 Co-operatives Act, 2005, as amended :Co-operatives to be struck off the regis- ter .....	77	42849
1508 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-operatives to be struck off the register .....	78	42849	1508 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-operatives to be struck off the register .....	78	42849
1509 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-operatives to be struck off the register .....	79	42849	1509 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-operatives to be struck off the register .....	79	42849
<b>GENERAL NOTICE</b>			<b>ALGEMENE KENNISGEWINGS</b>		
<b>Environmental Affairs, Department of</b>			<b>Omgewingsake, Departement van</b>		
614 National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (57/2003) :Notice of intention to declare an area in the North- ern Cape Province Specified in the notice a National Park (Meerkat) within the South African Radio Astronomy Observatory (SARAO) Area .....	80	42849	614 National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (57/2003) :Notice of intention to declare an area in the North- ern Cape Province Specified in the notice a National Park (Meerkat) within the South African Radio Astronomy Observatory (SARAO) Area .....	80	42849

No.	Page No.	Gazette No.	No.	Page No.	Gazette No.
<b>Higher Education and Training, Department of</b>			<b>Hoër Onderwys en Opleiding, Departement van</b>		
615 Continuing Education and Training Act (16/2006) :Call for public comments on the Revised National Norms and Standards for Funding TVET Colleges.....	83	42849	615 Continuing Education and Training Act (16/2006) :Call for public comments on the Revised National Norms and Standards for Funding TVET Colleges.....	83	42849
<b>Independent Communications Authority of South Africa</b>			<b>Onafhanklike Kommunikasie-owerheid van Suid-Afrika</b>		
616 Electronic Communications Act (36/2005), as amended :Application for the transfer of an Individual Electronic Communications Service and Individual Electronic Communications Network Service Licences from Limpopo Economic Development Enterprise to Limpopo Connexion.....	136	42849	616 Electronic Communications Act (36/2005), as amended :Application for the transfer of an Individual Electronic Communications Service and Individual Electronic Communications Network Service Licences from Limpopo Economic Development Enterprise to Limpopo Connexion .....	136	42849
<b>Justice and Constitutional Development, Department of</b>			<b>Justisie en Staatskundige Ontwikkeling, Departement van</b>		
622 Prescription Act (68/1969) and Criminal Procedure Act (51/1977) :Publication of explanatory summary: Prescription in Civil and Criminal Matters (Sexual Offences) Amendment Bill .....	4	42854	622 Verjaringswet (68/1969) en Strafproseswet (51/1977) :Publikasie van verduidelikende opsomming van die Wysigingswetsontwerp op verjaring in Siviele en Strafbare Aangeleenthede (Seksuele Misdrade), 2019.....	5	42854
<b>Rural Development and Land Reform, Department of</b>			<b>Landelike Ontwikkeling en Grondhervorming, Departement van</b>		
617 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) as amended :Remaining Extent of the Farm Paardekop 13 .....	139	42849	617 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) as amended :Remaining Extent of the Farm Paardekop 13 .....	139	42849
<b>South African Reserve Bank</b>			<b>Suid-Afrikaanse Reserwebank</b>		
618 Currency and Exchanges Act (9/1933), as amended :Notice and Order of Forfeiture: Nomusa Prudence Moja .....	140	42849	618 Currency and Exchanges Act (9/1933), as amended :Notice and Order of Forfeiture: Nomusa Prudence Moja .....	140	42849
619 Currency and Exchanges Act (9/1933), as amended :Notice and Order of Forfeiture: Speko Rice Traders Proprietary Limited....	141	42849	619 Currency and Exchanges Act (9/1933), as amended :Notice and Order of Forfeiture: Speko Rice Traders Proprietary Limited....	141	42849
620 Currency and Exchanges Act (9/1933), as amended :Notice and Order of Forfeiture: Bulelwa Mbune .....	142	42849	620 Currency and Exchanges Act (9/1933), as amended :Notice and Order of Forfeiture: Bulelwa Mbune .....	142	42849
<b>Transport, Department of</b>			<b>Vervoer, Departement van</b>		
621 Air Service Licensing Act (115/1990) :Application for the grant or amendment of domestic air service licence .....	143	42849	621 Air Service Licensing Act (115/1990) :Application for the grant or amendment of domestic air service licence .....	143	42849
<b>BOARD NOTICE</b>			<b>RAADSKENNISGEWINGS</b>		
189 Architectural Profession Act (44/2000) :Notice for Registration for Building Control Officers .....	144	42849	189 Architectural Profession Act (44/2000) :Notice for Registration for Building Control Officers .....	144	42849
190 Project and Construction Management Professions Act (48/2000) :Scope of Services for Professional Building Inspectors: Commencement date: 1 December 2019 .	4	42853	190 Project and Construction Management Professions Act (48/2000) :Scope of Services for Professional Building Inspectors: Commencement date: 1 December 2019 .	4	42853
191 Project and Construction Management Professions Act (48/2000) :Scope of Services for Certified Building Inspectors.....	4	42856	191 Project and Construction Management Professions Act (48/2000) :Scope of Services for Certified Building Inspectors.....	4	42856
195 Project and Construction Management Professions Act (48/2000) :Fees and charges for the calendar year 1 January 2020 to 31 December 2020 in terms of the Act .....	4	42868	195 Project and Construction Management Professions Act (48/2000) :Fees and charges for the calendar year 1 January 2020 to 31 December 2020 in terms of the Act .....	4	42868

**IMPORTANT NOTICE:**

**THE GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS WILL NOT BE HELD RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY ERRORS THAT MIGHT OCCUR DUE TO THE SUBMISSION OF INCOMPLETE / INCORRECT / ILLEGIBLE COPY.**

**No FUTURE QUERIES WILL BE HANDLED IN CONNECTION WITH THE ABOVE.**

**Contents**

<i>No.</i>		<i>Gazette No.</i>	<i>Page No.</i>
<b>GOVERNMENT NOTICES • GOEWERMENTSKENNISGEWINGS</b>			
<b>Environmental Affairs, Department of/ Omgewingsake, Departement van</b>			
1567	National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004): Biodiversity Management Plan for the Bontebok (Damaliscus Pygargus).....	42887	19
1568	National Environmental Management Act (107/1998): Delegation of powers and duties under section 87A(3)(b) of the National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act (10/2004) .....	42887	88
<b>Health, Department of/ Gesondheid, Departement van</b>			
1569	Nursing Act (33/2005): Rules for Continuing Professional Development and Renewal of Registration.....	42887	89
1570	Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPCSA): Call for nominations of members to serve on the Professional Boards of the Health Professions Council of South Africa.....	42887	99
1571	National Health Laboratory Service Act (37/2000): Call for nominations for suitable candidates to serve as members on the Board of the National Health Laboratory Service in terms of the Act.....	42887	101
<b>Rural Development and Land Reform, Department of/ Landelike Ontwikkeling en Grondhervorming, Departement van</b>			
1572	Interim Protection of Informal Land Rights Act (31/1996): Extension of the application of the provisions of the said Act for a further period of 12 months ending on 31 December 2020 .....	42887	102
1572	Wet op die Tussentydse Beskerming van Informele Grondregte (31/1996): Verlenging van die toepassing van die bepalings van die Wet vir 'n verdere tydperk van 12 maande, eindigende op 31 Desember 2020.....	42887	102
<b>South African Revenue Service/ Suid-Afrikaanse Inkomstediens</b>			
1573	Income Tax Act (58/1962): Agreement between the Government of the Republic of South Africa and the Government of the Commonwealth of Dominica for the exchange of information with respect to taxes and tax matters....	42887	103
1573	Inkomstebelastingwet (58/1962): Ooreenkoms tussen die Regering van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika en die Regering van die Gemenebes van Dominica vir die uitruil van inligting met betrekking tot belasting en belastingaangeleenthede .....	42887	114
<b>Trade and Industry, Department of/ Handel en Nywerheid, Departement van</b>			
1574	Co-operatives Act, 2005, as amended: Co-operatives that have been removed from the register .....	42887	125
<b>Transport, Department of/ Vervoer, Departement van</b>			
1575	Economic Regulation of Transport Bill, 2019 ("the Bill"): Notice of intention to introduce the Bill into Parliament in Terms of Rule 241 (1)(b) of the National Assembly .....	42887	126

**GENERAL NOTICES • ALGEMENE KENNISGEWINGS**

<b>Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, Department of/ Landbou, Bosbou en Visserye, Departement van</b>			
635	National Forests Act (84/1998): A list of all protected tree species under section 12 of the Act.....	42887	127
<b>Independent Communications Authority of South Africa/ Onafhanklike Kommunikasie-owerheid van Suid-Afrika</b>			
636	Electronic Communications Act (Act No. 36 of 2005): Notice inviting comments regarding the Draft Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan for the Frequency Band 470 to 694 MHz for Direct Migration from Analogue Television and the Release of the Band 694 to 862 MHz .....	42887	133
<b>Justice and Constitutional Development, Department of/ Justisie en Staatskundige Ontwikkeling, Departement van</b>			
637	Promotion of Access to Information Act (2/2000): Description submitted in terms of section 15(1): Western Cape Provincial Government.....	42887	175
<b>Labour, Department of/ Arbeid, Departement van</b>			
638	Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act (130/1993), as amended: Data cleansing on all active pensions in the compensation fund .....	42887	207
<b>South African Reserve Bank/ Suid-Afrikaanse Reserwebank</b>			
639	Insurance Act (18/2017): Exemption of Intermediaries Guarantee Facility Limited from the prudential requirements of the Act.....	42887	209
640	Banks Act (94/1990 – "The Banks Act"): Withdrawal of consent granted in terms of section 34 of the Banks Act to maintain a representative office of a foreign institution in the Republic of South Africa: Zenith Bank PLC .....	42887	209
641	The Banks Act (94/1990): Registration-Bank of Communications Co. Limited Johannesburg Branch.....	42887	210

## BOARD NOTICES • RAADSKENNISGEWINGS

198	Auditing Professions Act, 2005 (Act 26 of 2005): Notice to withdraw the Publication of Board Notice 144 of 2017 and Board Notice 98 of 2018.....	42887	211
199	Financial Markets Act, 2012: Approved amendments to the JSE Derivatives Rules .....	42887	212





government  
printing

Department:  
Government Printing Works  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

## HIGH ALERT: SCAM WARNING!!!

### TO ALL SUPPLIERS AND SERVICE PROVIDERS OF THE GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS

It has come to the attention of the *GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS* that there are certain unscrupulous companies and individuals who are defrauding unsuspecting businesses disguised as representatives of the *Government Printing Works* (GPW).

The scam involves the fraudsters using the letterhead of *GPW* to send out fake tender bids to companies and requests to supply equipment and goods.

Although the contact person's name on the letter may be of an existing official, the contact details on the letter are not the same as the *Government Printing Works*. When searching on the Internet for the address of the company that has sent the fake tender document, the address does not exist.

The banking details are in a private name and not company name. Government will never ask you to deposit any funds for any business transaction. *GPW* has alerted the relevant law enforcement authorities to investigate this scam to protect legitimate businesses as well as the name of the organisation.

Example of e-mails these fraudsters are using:

[PROCUREMENT@GPW-GOV.ORG](mailto:PROCUREMENT@GPW-GOV.ORG)

Should you suspect that you are a victim of a scam, you must urgently contact the police and inform the *GPW*.

*GPW* has an official email with the domain as [@gpw.gov.za](mailto:@gpw.gov.za)

Government e-mails DO NOT have org in their e-mail addresses. All of these fraudsters also use the same or very similar telephone numbers. Although such number with an area code 012 looks like a landline, it is not fixed to any property.

*GPW* will never send you an e-mail asking you to supply equipment and goods without a purchase/order number. *GPW* does not procure goods for another level of Government. The organisation will not be liable for actions that result in companies or individuals being resultant victims of such a scam.

*Government Printing Works* gives businesses the opportunity to supply goods and services through RFQ / Tendering process. In order to be eligible to bid to provide goods and services, suppliers must be registered on the National Treasury's Central Supplier Database (CSD). To be registered, they must meet all current legislative requirements (e.g. have a valid tax clearance certificate and be in good standing with the South African Revenue Services - SARS).

The tender process is managed through the Supply Chain Management (SCM) system of the department. SCM is highly regulated to minimise the risk of fraud, and to meet objectives which include value for money, open and effective competition, equitability, accountability, fair dealing, transparency and an ethical approach. Relevant legislation, regulations, policies, guidelines and instructions can be found on the tender's website.

## Fake Tenders

National Treasury's CSD has launched the Government Order Scam campaign to combat fraudulent requests for quotes (RFQs). Such fraudulent requests have resulted in innocent companies losing money. We work hard at preventing and fighting fraud, but criminal activity is always a risk.

### How tender scams work

There are many types of tender scams. Here are some of the more frequent scenarios:

Fraudsters use what appears to be government department stationery with fictitious logos and contact details to send a fake RFQ to a company to invite it to urgently supply goods. Shortly after the company has submitted its quote, it receives notification that it has won the tender. The company delivers the goods to someone who poses as an official or at a fake site. The Department has no idea of this transaction made in its name. The company is then never paid and suffers a loss.

OR

Fraudsters use what appears to be government department stationery with fictitious logos and contact details to send a fake RFQ to Company A to invite it to urgently supply goods. Typically, the tender specification is so unique that only Company B (a fictitious company created by the fraudster) can supply the goods in question.

Shortly after Company A has submitted its quote it receives notification that it has won the tender. Company A orders the goods and pays a deposit to the fictitious Company B. Once Company B receives the money, it disappears. Company A's money is stolen in the process.

Protect yourself from being scammed

- If you are registered on the supplier databases and you receive a request to tender or quote that seems to be from a government department, contact the department to confirm that the request is legitimate. Do not use the contact details on the tender document as these might be fraudulent.
- Compare tender details with those that appear in the Tender Bulletin, available online at [www.gpwonline.co.za](http://www.gpwonline.co.za)
- Make sure you familiarise yourself with how government procures goods and services. Visit the tender website for more information on how to tender.
- If you are uncomfortable about the request received, consider visiting the government department and/or the place of delivery and/or the service provider from whom you will be sourcing the goods.
- In the unlikely event that you are asked for a deposit to make a bid, contact the SCM unit of the department in question to ask whether this is in fact correct.

Any incidents of corruption, fraud, theft and misuse of government property in the *Government Printing Works* can be reported to:

Supply Chain Management: Ms. Anna Marie Du Toit, Tel. (012) 748 6292.  
Email: [Annamarie.DuToit@gpw.gov.za](mailto:Annamarie.DuToit@gpw.gov.za)

Marketing and Stakeholder Relations: Ms Bonakele Mbhele, at Tel. (012) 748 6193.  
Email: [Bonakele.Mbhele@gpw.gov.za](mailto:Bonakele.Mbhele@gpw.gov.za)

Security Services: Mr Daniel Legoabe, at tel. (012) 748 6176.  
Email: [Daniel.Legoabe@gpw.gov.za](mailto:Daniel.Legoabe@gpw.gov.za)



# Closing times for **ORDINARY WEEKLY** **GOVERNMENT GAZETTE** **2019**

*The closing time is **15:00** sharp on the following days:*

- **27 December 2018**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **04 January 2019**
- **04 January**, Friday for the issue of Friday **11 January 2019**
- **11 January**, Friday for the issue of Friday **18 January 2019**
- **18 January**, Friday for the issue of Friday **25 January 2019**
- **25 January**, Friday for the issue of Friday **01 February 2019**
- **01 February**, Friday for the issue of Friday **08 February 2019**
- **08 February**, Friday for the issue of Friday **15 February 2019**
- **15 February**, Friday for the issue of Friday **22 February 2019**
- **22 February**, Friday for the issue of Friday **01 March 2019**
- **01 March**, Friday for the issue of Friday **08 March 2019**
- **08 March**, Friday for the issue of Friday **15 March 2019**
- **14 March**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **22 March 2019**
- **22 March**, Friday for the issue of Friday **29 March 2019**
- **29 March**, Friday for the issue of Friday **05 April 2019**
- **05 April**, Friday for the issue of Friday **12 April 2019**
- **11 April**, Thursday for the issue of Thursday **18 April 2019**
- **17 April**, Wednesday for the issue of Friday **26 April 2019**
- **25 April**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **03 May 2019**
- **03 May**, Friday for the issue of Friday **10 May 2019**
- **10 May**, Friday for the issue of Friday **17 May 2019**
- **17 May**, Friday for the issue of Friday **24 May 2019**
- **24 May**, Friday for the issue of Friday **31 May 2019**
- **31 May**, Friday for the issue of Friday **07 June 2019**
- **07 June**, Friday for the issue of Friday **14 June 2019**
- **13 June**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **21 June 2019**
- **21 June**, Friday for the issue of Friday **28 June 2019**
- **28 June**, Friday for the issue of Friday **05 July 2019**
- **05 July**, Friday for the issue of Friday **12 July 2019**
- **12 July**, Friday for the issue of Friday **19 July 2019**
- **19 July**, Friday for the issue of Friday **26 July 2019**
- **26 July**, Friday for the issue of Friday **02 August 2019**
- **01 August**, Thursday for the issue of Thursday **08 August 2019**
- **08 August**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **16 August 2019**
- **16 August**, Friday for the issue of Friday **23 August 2019**
- **23 August**, Friday for the issue of Friday **30 August 2019**
- **30 August**, Friday for the issue of Friday **06 September 2019**
- **06 September**, Friday for the issue of Friday **13 September 2019**
- **13 September**, Friday for the issue of Friday **20 September 2019**
- **19 September**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **27 September 2019**
- **27 September**, Friday for the issue of Friday **04 October 2019**
- **04 October**, Friday for the issue of Friday **11 October 2019**
- **11 October**, Friday for the issue of Friday **18 October 2019**
- **18 October**, Friday for the issue of Friday **25 October 2019**
- **25 October**, Friday for the issue of Friday **01 November 2019**
- **01 November**, Friday for the issue of Friday **08 November 2019**
- **08 November**, Friday for the issue of Friday **15 November 2019**
- **15 November**, Friday for the issue of Friday **22 November 2019**
- **22 November**, Friday for the issue of Friday **29 November 2019**
- **29 November**, Friday for the issue of Friday **06 December 2019**
- **06 December**, Friday for the issue of Friday **13 December 2019**
- **12 December**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **20 December 2019**
- **18 December**, Wednesday for the issue of Friday **27 December 2019**

## LIST OF TARIFF RATES FOR PUBLICATION OF NOTICES

**COMMENCEMENT: 1 APRIL 2018**

### NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL

Notice sizes for National, Provincial & Tender gazettes 1/4, 2/4, 3/4, 4/4 per page. Notices submitted will be charged at R1008.80 per full page, pro-rated based on the above categories.

Pricing for National, Provincial - Variable Priced Notices		
Notice Type	Page Space	New Price (R)
Ordinary National, Provincial	1/4 - Quarter Page	252.20
Ordinary National, Provincial	2/4 - Half Page	504.40
Ordinary National, Provincial	3/4 - Three Quarter Page	756.60
Ordinary National, Provincial	4/4 - Full Page	1008.80

### EXTRA-ORDINARY

All Extra-ordinary National and Provincial gazette notices are non-standard notices and attract a variable price based on the number of pages submitted.

The pricing structure for National and Provincial notices which are submitted as **Extra ordinary submissions** will be charged at **R3026.32** per page.

## GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES

The **Government Printing Works (GPW)** has established rules for submitting notices in line with its electronic notice processing system, which requires the use of electronic *Adobe* Forms. Please ensure that you adhere to these guidelines when completing and submitting your notice submission.

### CLOSING TIMES FOR ACCEPTANCE OF NOTICES

1. The *Government Gazette* and *Government Tender Bulletin* are weekly publications that are published on Fridays and the closing time for the acceptance of notices is strictly applied according to the scheduled time for each gazette.
2. Please refer to the Submission Notice Deadline schedule in the table below. This schedule is also published online on the Government Printing works website [www.gpwonline.co.za](http://www.gpwonline.co.za)

All re-submissions will be subject to the standard cut-off times.

**All notices received after the closing time will be rejected.**

Government Gazette Type	Publication Frequency	Publication Date	Submission Deadline	Cancellations Deadline
National Gazette	Weekly	Friday	Friday 15h00 for next Friday	Tuesday, 15h00 - 3 working days prior to publication
Regulation Gazette	Weekly	Friday	Friday 15h00 for next Friday	Tuesday, 15h00 - 3 working days prior to publication
Petrol Price Gazette	Monthly	Tuesday before 1st Wednesday of the month	One day before publication	1 working day prior to publication
Road Carrier Permits	Weekly	Friday	Thursday 15h00 for next Friday	3 working days prior to publication
Unclaimed Monies (Justice, Labour or Lawyers)	January / September 2 per year	Last Friday	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication
Parliament (Acts, White Paper, Green Paper)	As required	Any day of the week	None	3 working days prior to publication
Manuals	Bi- Monthly	2nd and last Thursday of the month	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication
State of Budget (National Treasury)	Monthly	30th or last Friday of the month	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication
Extraordinary Gazettes	As required	Any day of the week	Before 10h00 on publication date	Before 10h00 on publication date
Legal Gazettes A, B and C	Weekly	Friday	One week before publication	Tuesday, 15h00 - 3 working days prior to publication
Tender Bulletin	Weekly	Friday	Friday 15h00 for next Friday	Tuesday, 15h00 - 3 working days prior to publication
Gauteng	Weekly	Wednesday	Two weeks before publication	3 days <b>after</b> submission deadline
Eastern Cape	Weekly	Monday	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication
Northern Cape	Weekly	Monday	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication
North West	Weekly	Tuesday	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication
KwaZulu-Natal	Weekly	Thursday	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication
Limpopo	Weekly	Friday	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication
Mpumalanga	Weekly	Friday	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication

### GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES

Government Gazette Type	Publication Frequency	Publication Date	Submission Deadline	Cancellations Deadline
Gauteng Liquor License Gazette	Monthly	Wednesday before the First Friday of the month	Two weeks before publication	3 working days <b>after</b> submission deadline
Northern Cape Liquor License Gazette	Monthly	First Friday of the month	Two weeks before publication	3 working days <b>after</b> submission deadline
National Liquor License Gazette	Monthly	First Friday of the month	Two weeks before publication	3 working days <b>after</b> submission deadline
Mpumalanga Liquor License Gazette	Bi-Monthly	Second & Fourth Friday	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication

### EXTRAORDINARY GAZETTES

3. *Extraordinary Gazettes* can have only one publication date. If multiple publications of an *Extraordinary Gazette* are required, a separate Z95/Z95Prov *Adobe* Forms for each publication date must be submitted.

### NOTICE SUBMISSION PROCESS

4. Download the latest *Adobe* form, for the relevant notice to be placed, from the **Government Printing Works** website [www.gpwonline.co.za](http://www.gpwonline.co.za).
5. The *Adobe* form needs to be completed electronically using *Adobe Acrobat / Acrobat Reader*. Only electronically completed *Adobe* forms will be accepted. No printed, handwritten and/or scanned *Adobe* forms will be accepted.
6. The completed electronic *Adobe* form has to be submitted via email to [submit.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:submit.egazette@gpw.gov.za). The form needs to be submitted in its original electronic *Adobe* format to enable the system to extract the completed information from the form for placement in the publication.
7. Every notice submitted **must** be accompanied by an official **GPW** quotation. This must be obtained from the *eGazette* Contact Centre.
8. Each notice submission should be sent as a single email. The email **must** contain **all documentation relating to a particular notice submission**.
  - 8.1. Each of the following documents must be attached to the email as a separate attachment:
    - 8.1.1. An electronically completed *Adobe* form, specific to the type of notice that is to be placed.
      - 8.1.1.1. For *National Government Gazette* or *Provincial Gazette* notices, the notices must be accompanied by an electronic Z95 or Z95Prov *Adobe* form
      - 8.1.1.2. The notice content (body copy) **MUST** be a separate attachment.
    - 8.1.2. A copy of the official **Government Printing Works** quotation you received for your notice. (*Please see Quotation section below for further details*)
    - 8.1.3. A valid and legible Proof of Payment / Purchase Order: **Government Printing Works** account customer must include a copy of their Purchase Order. **Non-Government Printing Works** account customer needs to submit the proof of payment for the notice
    - 8.1.4. Where separate notice content is applicable (Z95, Z95 Prov and TForm 3, it should **also** be attached as a separate attachment. (*Please see the Copy Section below, for the specifications*).
    - 8.1.5. Any additional notice information if applicable.

## GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES

9. The electronic *Adobe* form will be taken as the primary source for the notice information to be published. Instructions that are on the email body or covering letter that contradicts the notice form content will not be considered. The information submitted on the electronic *Adobe* form will be published as-is.
10. To avoid duplicated publication of the same notice and double billing, Please submit your notice **ONLY ONCE**.
11. Notices brought to **GPW** by “walk-in” customers on electronic media can only be submitted in *Adobe* electronic form format. All “walk-in” customers with notices that are not on electronic *Adobe* forms will be routed to the Contact Centre where they will be assisted to complete the forms in the required format.
12. Should a customer submit a bulk submission of hard copy notices delivered by a messenger on behalf of any organisation e.g. newspaper publisher, the messenger will be referred back to the sender as the submission does not adhere to the submission rules.

### QUOTATIONS

13. Quotations are valid until the next tariff change.
  - 13.1. **Take note:** **GPW**'s annual tariff increase takes place on **1 April** therefore any quotations issued, accepted and submitted for publication up to **31 March** will keep the old tariff. For notices to be published from 1 April, a quotation must be obtained from **GPW** with the new tariffs. Where a tariff increase is implemented during the year, **GPW** endeavours to provide customers with 30 days' notice of such changes.
14. Each quotation has a unique number.
15. Form Content notices must be emailed to the *eGazette* Contact Centre for a quotation.
  - 15.1. The *Adobe* form supplied is uploaded by the Contact Centre Agent and the system automatically calculates the cost of your notice based on the layout/format of the content supplied.
  - 15.2. It is critical that these *Adobe* Forms are completed correctly and adhere to the guidelines as stipulated by **GPW**.
16. **APPLICABLE ONLY TO GPW ACCOUNT HOLDERS:**
  - 16.1. **GPW** Account Customers must provide a valid **GPW** account number to obtain a quotation.
  - 16.2. Accounts for **GPW** account customers **must** be active with sufficient credit to transact with **GPW** to submit notices.
    - 16.2.1. If you are unsure about or need to resolve the status of your account, please contact the **GPW** Finance Department prior to submitting your notices. (If the account status is not resolved prior to submission of your notice, the notice will be failed during the process).
17. **APPLICABLE ONLY TO CASH CUSTOMERS:**
  - 17.1. Cash customers doing **bulk payments** must use a **single email address** in order to use the **same proof of payment** for submitting multiple notices.
18. The responsibility lies with you, the customer, to ensure that the payment made for your notice(s) to be published is sufficient to cover the cost of the notice(s).
19. Each quotation will be associated with one proof of payment / purchase order / cash receipt.
  - 19.1. This means that **the quotation number can only be used once to make a payment.**

**GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES****COPY (SEPARATE NOTICE CONTENT DOCUMENT)**

20. Where the copy is part of a separate attachment document for Z95, Z95Prov and TForm03
- 20.1. Copy of notices must be supplied in a separate document and may not constitute part of any covering letter, purchase order, proof of payment or other attached documents.
- The content document should contain only one notice. (You may include the different translations of the same notice in the same document).
- 20.2. The notice should be set on an A4 page, with margins and fonts set as follows:
- Page size = A4 Portrait with page margins: Top = 40mm, LH/RH = 16mm, Bottom = 40mm;  
Use font size: Arial or Helvetica 10pt with 11pt line spacing;
- Page size = A4 Landscape with page margins: Top = 16mm, LH/RH = 40mm, Bottom = 16mm;  
Use font size: Arial or Helvetica 10pt with 11pt line spacing;

**CANCELLATIONS**

21. Cancellation of notice submissions are accepted by **GPW** according to the deadlines stated in the table above in point 2. Non-compliance to these deadlines will result in your request being failed. Please pay special attention to the different deadlines for each gazette. Please note that any notices cancelled after the cancellation deadline will be published and charged at full cost.
22. Requests for cancellation must be sent by the original sender of the notice and must be accompanied by the relevant notice reference number (N-) in the email body.

**AMENDMENTS TO NOTICES**

23. With effect from 01 October 2015, **GPW** will not longer accept amendments to notices. The cancellation process will need to be followed according to the deadline and a new notice submitted thereafter for the next available publication date.

**REJECTIONS**

24. All notices not meeting the submission rules will be rejected to the customer to be corrected and resubmitted. Assistance will be available through the Contact Centre should help be required when completing the forms. (012-748 6200 or email [info.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:info.egazette@gpw.gov.za)). Reasons for rejections include the following:
- 24.1. Incorrectly completed forms and notices submitted in the wrong format, will be rejected.
- 24.2. Any notice submissions not on the correct *Adobe* electronic form, will be rejected.
- 24.3. Any notice submissions not accompanied by the proof of payment / purchase order will be rejected and the notice will not be processed.
- 24.4. Any submissions or re-submissions that miss the submission cut-off times will be rejected to the customer. The Notice needs to be re-submitted with a new publication date.

**GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES****APPROVAL OF NOTICES**

25. Any notices other than legal notices are subject to the approval of the Government Printer, who may refuse acceptance or further publication of any notice.
26. No amendments will be accepted in respect to separate notice content that was sent with a Z95 or Z95Prov notice submissions. The copy of notice in layout format (previously known as proof-out) is only provided where requested, for Advertiser to see the notice in final Gazette layout. Should they find that the information submitted was incorrect, they should request for a notice cancellation and resubmit the corrected notice, subject to standard submission deadlines. The cancellation is also subject to the stages in the publishing process, i.e. If cancellation is received when production (printing process) has commenced, then the notice cannot be cancelled.

**GOVERNMENT PRINTER INDEMNIFIED AGAINST LIABILITY**

27. The Government Printer will assume no liability in respect of—
  - 27.1. any delay in the publication of a notice or publication of such notice on any date other than that stipulated by the advertiser;
  - 27.2. erroneous classification of a notice, or the placement of such notice in any section or under any heading other than the section or heading stipulated by the advertiser;
  - 27.3. any editing, revision, omission, typographical errors or errors resulting from faint or indistinct copy.

**LIABILITY OF ADVERTISER**

28. Advertisers will be held liable for any compensation and costs arising from any action which may be instituted against the Government Printer in consequence of the publication of any notice.

**CUSTOMER INQUIRIES**

Many of our customers request immediate feedback/confirmation of notice placement in the gazette from our Contact Centre once they have submitted their notice – While **GPW** deems it one of their highest priorities and responsibilities to provide customers with this requested feedback and the best service at all times, we are only able to do so once we have started processing your notice submission.

**GPW** has a 2-working day turnaround time for processing notices received according to the business rules and deadline submissions.

Please keep this in mind when making inquiries about your notice submission at the Contact Centre.

29. Requests for information, quotations and inquiries must be sent to the Contact Centre ONLY.
30. Requests for Quotations (RFQs) should be received by the Contact Centre at least **2 working days** before the submission deadline for that specific publication.



## GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES

### PAYMENT OF COST

31. The Request for Quotation for placement of the notice should be sent to the Gazette Contact Centre as indicated above, prior to submission of notice for advertising.
32. Payment should then be made, or Purchase Order prepared based on the received quotation, prior to the submission of the notice for advertising as these documents i.e. proof of payment or Purchase order will be required as part of the notice submission, as indicated earlier.
33. Every proof of payment must have a valid **GPW** quotation number as a reference on the proof of payment document.
34. Where there is any doubt about the cost of publication of a notice, and in the case of copy, an enquiry, accompanied by the relevant copy, should be addressed to the Gazette Contact Centre, **Government Printing Works**, Private Bag X85, Pretoria, 0001 email: [info.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:info.egazette@gpw.gov.za) before publication.
35. Overpayment resulting from miscalculation on the part of the advertiser of the cost of publication of a notice will not be refunded, unless the advertiser furnishes adequate reasons why such miscalculation occurred. In the event of underpayments, the difference will be recovered from the advertiser, and future notice(s) will not be published until such time as the full cost of such publication has been duly paid in cash or electronic funds transfer into the **Government Printing Works** banking account.
36. In the event of a notice being cancelled, a refund will be made only if no cost regarding the placing of the notice has been incurred by the **Government Printing Works**.
37. The **Government Printing Works** reserves the right to levy an additional charge in cases where notices, the cost of which has been calculated in accordance with the List of Fixed Tariff Rates, are subsequently found to be excessively lengthy or to contain overmuch or complicated tabulation.

### PROOF OF PUBLICATION

38. Copies of any of the *Government Gazette* or *Provincial Gazette* can be downloaded from the **Government Printing Works** website [www.gpwnonline.co.za](http://www.gpwnonline.co.za) free of charge, should a proof of publication be required.
39. Printed copies may be ordered from the Publications department at the ruling price. The **Government Printing Works** will assume no liability for any failure to post or for any delay in despatching of such *Government Gazette(s)*

## GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS CONTACT INFORMATION

#### Physical Address:

**Government Printing Works**  
149 Bosman Street  
Pretoria

#### Postal Address:

Private Bag X85  
Pretoria  
0001

#### GPW Banking Details:

**Bank:** ABSA Bosman Street  
**Account No.:** 405 7114 016  
**Branch Code:** 632-005

**For Gazette and Notice submissions:** Gazette Submissions:

**For queries and quotations, contact:** Gazette Contact Centre:

**E-mail:** [submit.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:submit.egazette@gpw.gov.za)

**E-mail:** [info.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:info.egazette@gpw.gov.za)

**Tel:** 012-748 6200

**Contact person for subscribers:** Mrs M. Toka:

**E-mail:** [subscriptions@gpw.gov.za](mailto:subscriptions@gpw.gov.za)

**Tel:** 012-748-6066 / 6060 / 6058

**Fax:** 012-323-9574



---

**GOVERNMENT NOTICES • GOEWERMENTSKENNISGEWINGS**

---

**DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS****NO. 1567****06 DECEMBER 2019****NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT: BIODIVERSITY ACT, 2004 (ACT NO. 10 OF 2004)****BIODIVERSITY MANAGEMENT PLAN FOR THE BONTBOK (DAMALISCUS PYGARGUS)**

I, Barbara Dallas Creecy, Minister of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries, hereby, under section 43(1)(b), read with section 43(3) of the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004), publish a Biodiversity Management Plan for the Bontebok (*Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*) in the Schedule hereto.



**BARBARA DALLAS CREECY**  
**MINISTER OF ENVIRONMENT, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES**

## SCHEDULE

BIODIVERSITY MANAGEMENT PLAN FOR THE BONTEBOK  
*Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*  
IN  
SOUTH AFRICA



Jointly developed by SANParks and CapeNature

Carly Cowell<sup>1</sup> and Coral Birss<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Cape Research Centre, South African National Parks

<sup>2</sup>Scientific Services, CapeNature

Citation

Cowell, C.R. and Birss, C. 2017. Biodiversity Management Plan for The Bontebok (*Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*) in South Africa. Unpublished Report, jointly developed by South African National Parks, CapeNature and the National Department of Environmental Affairs. Version 1.0

## FOREWORD - PROF CHRISTO FABRICIUS

Soon after the first Europeans arrived in South Africa they encountered two spectacularly coloured antelope types that closely resembled one another. They called them bontebok and Blesbok but, as one does with siblings that look alike, regularly mistook one for the other; the first of many mix-ups in the bontebok's recent history. This on-going confusion was an important contributor to the near-extinction of bontebok with its narrower habitat requirements and smaller numbers. The unfortunate animal was, after being almost hunted to extinction, practically hybridized to extinction through human-influenced interbreeding. But it was also humans, the cause of the problem, who brought bontebok back from the brink of extinction when a few farmers in the Bredasdorp area started to actively conserve them. These bold actions, aimed at breeding the species, first gave rise to the establishment of bontebok National Park and later led to the proclamation of De Hoop Nature Reserve. The fortunate (albeit unintended) consequence of this was the preservation of equally threatened ecosystems: Fynbos and Renosterveld. It's a fascinating history and strong cultural and ecological association with the Fynbos biome make the bontebok an ideal flagship for ecosystem conservation. A strategy to conserve it must therefore have more to it than mere genetic conservation or protected area expansion: bontebok must now become part of the Fynbos Biome's and South Africa's legacy and identity. Its conservation strategy therefore quite aptly includes a strong outreach and awareness-raising component which will definitely cultivate public admiration for and attachment to this very special species - and its habitat. It should be easy to gain public support for such a likeable animal. This first Biodiversity Management Plan is an important step towards establishing bontebok as the flagship for collaborative adaptive ecosystem conservation in the Fynbos Biome. A host of Provincial and National government departments, parastatals, NGOs and academic institutions have jointly taken responsibility for the plan's implementation, with citizen's participation and co-management at the heart of it. The management plan has four solid legs: 1) safe-guarding genetic integrity; 2) conserving and restoring natural habitats; 3) communicating and raising awareness; and 4) managing adaptively, underpinned by research and monitoring. The many proposed actions may present capacity challenges. But this could also build resilience: not all strategies have to be implemented at once. The difficult part will be to safe-guard bontebok's genetic integrity, particularly in the face of hunters' and game farmers' demand for animals that are purpose-bred for appearance, especially when mounted on trophy room walls. But with the flagship appeal of the species, the organizational synergy that now exists, the binding legislation, and adaptive management, the future for bontebok looks much brighter today than before. Those visionary Bredasdorp farmers and forward-looking officials who started it all would be smiling from ear to ear if they were here.

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Bontebok (*Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*) is endemic to the East Coast Renosterveld bioregion within the Cape Floristic Region (CFR) of the Western Cape. Evidence from fossil records indicate that past climatic and habitat change promoted the splitting of *D. pygargus* into the two separately classified subspecies known today; blesbok (*Damaliscus pygargus phillipsi*) and bontebok (*Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*). Each subspecies exhibits different behavioural and morphological traits including body markings and hide colours. Historically, the natural ranges of the two subspecies did not overlap, with blesbok occurring widely on the grasslands of Gauteng, Eastern Cape, Mpumalanga and Free State and bontebok restricted to the coastal plains in the southern CFR. Here the numbers of bontebok declined to near extinction due to hunting and human settlement, in the 1800s, to a known population of 20 animals in the Bredasdorp area. As a result a national park was proclaimed to protect the remaining bontebok and their numbers increased. Worldwide, habitat loss and the loss of genetic integrity by anthropogenic hybridisation currently threaten many species. Wildlife species are extensively translocated outside of their historic distribution ranges onto private land as a part of wildlife management and commercial breeding practices in South Africa. This has at times led to multiple species on the same property outside their natural ranges. Thus, the two subspecies (bontebok and blesbok) have come into contact and hybridized, a case which would not have happened naturally as they historically had largely non-overlapping ranges with different ecosystems.

Bontebok now occur in a number of small, isolated populations across the country and are threatened by low genetic diversity, population fragmentation, habitat fragmentation and hybridisation with blesbok and blesbok/bontebok hybrids. In order to mitigate the historic and current threats to bontebok and conserve this iconic species an integrated management strategy, applied through collaborative partnerships between stakeholders, is urgently required. This would encourage public support, ensure genetic diversity within the meta-population and sustainable utilisation of the species by the private sector.

The bontebok population within the Natural Distribution Range (NDR) and Extended Distribution Range (EDR) in the Western Cape comprises approximately 1650 individuals. An approximately further 7500 individuals survive on properties outside the NDR of the species throughout South Africa. Bontebok are tolerant of human activities and adapt to changes in the landscape and readily utilise transformed landscapes with old fields of short grass areas. The bontebok is listed as Vulnerable (D1, B2a) on the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN) Red List of Threatened Species, as a Protected Species under the Threatened or Protected Species (TOPS) regulations in terms of Section 56(1) d of the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (Act 10 of 2004), and on Appendix II under the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES). The non-detrimental finding (NDF) for bontebok issued by the Scientific Authority recommended a BMP-S to improve the management and monitoring of the subspecies.

In 2011, an inter-agency collaboration between South African National Parks, CapeNature and the National Department of Environmental Affairs was initiated to develop a bontebok BMP-S to ensure the long-term survival of the species in nature. Engagements with a variety of stakeholders took place and identified threats and challenges to the persistence of bontebok. These include human-mediated hybridisation and loss of genetic diversity, habitat loss, disease and parasite problems and the risk of unintended hybridisation as well as the lack of a meta-population management plan. The selection of the bontebok for a BMP-S is based on the recommendations from the NDF, its threat status, the need for a meta-population strategy and inter-agency collaboration on shared objectives for the conservation of the species, standardised monitoring, cooperative research, and increased participation by landowners.

Both internal and external stakeholder consultations developed the following **desired state** for the bontebok: “The conservation of a secured and well managed\* bontebok meta-population.”



*\* Well managed: an increase in pure Bontebok numbers especially in their indigenous range, sustainable use of habitat and species, securing genetic integrity, researched and regulated to inform decision making and planning.*

This desired state is aimed at creating a long term vision for successful conservation of this species and this is to be achieved by a set of associated **objectives**:

- To conserve the genetic integrity and diversity of bontebok;
- To prevent further habitat loss and habitat degradation, and establish and maintain historic habitat connectivity;
- To establish and maintain effective communication and awareness between and among stakeholders; and
- To investigate and conduct research aimed at supporting adaptive management and the implementation of actions to promote and ensure bontebok conservation.

The implementation of the bontebok BMP-S will have the following **benefits**:

1. Ensuring the bontebok population inside and outside (nationally) the NDR increases and is resilient to threats faced;
2. Ensuring that harvesting and off-takes of bontebok are sustainable;
3. Scientific sound meta-population management is implemented and through this the full extent of genetic diversity is represented throughout the population;
4. To facilitate the establishment and maintenance of a National Database to advise on the status of populations;
5. Identify priority conservation land for bontebok conservation within the NDR;
6. Promote collaboration and cooperation between government agencies as well as between government and the private sector;
7. Coordinated management actions; and
8. Identify accountable parties and clearly define roles and responsibilities.

The anticipated **outcomes** of the BMP-S are as follows:

1. The management of the bontebok population inside and outside (nationally) the NDR to ensure the long term survival of this species;
2. A co-ordinated national approach to bontebok conservation both in- and outside of the NDR in terms of management, monitoring and research;
3. The halt of the loss of habitat and ultimately ensuring a steady increase in conserved habitat and rehabilitation of degraded areas for re-introduction of bontebok especially within, but also outside the NDR;
4. Highlight research and communication priorities and identify appropriate parties to implement actions;
5. A National Database of population distribution and national testing and profiling protocols for bontebok;
6. The identification and immediate elimination of hybrids of this species to maintain the economic and conservation value of bontebok; and
7. Promotion of bontebok as an iconic flagship conservation species for Renosterveld vegetation, the CFR and the World Heritage Sites found there.

The Fynbos Biome comprises more than 120 different vegetation types, and there are four different types of Renosterveld in the NDR of the bontebok: Western-, Central- and Eastern-Rûens Shale Renosterveld and Rûens Silcrete Renosterveld. Today, this Renosterveld is highly fragmented with fewer than 50 fragments over 100 ha remaining. Before human settlement in the region, this vegetation type supported large numbers of big game, including black rhino, eland, the now extinct bluebuck and quagga, and bontebok. Sadly, the extirpation

of the large herbivores and severe transformation of the landscape has allowed extensive areas to become degraded. The bontebok is recognised as an iconic flagship species for the protection and conservation of Renosterveld. The Biodiversity Management Plan for the bontebok provides the opportunity for the conservation of both the bontebok antelope and the critically endangered renosterveld vegetation type on which they naturally occur. It serves as a reference to the management and development of the identified actions to enable stakeholders to contribute to the desired outcome of ensuring the long term survival of the subspecies in nature and thereby ensuring the sustainable use of the bontebok by private land owners participating in the meta-population strategy.

The bontebok BMP-S focusses on implementing a meta-population strategy and associated conservation actions aimed at ensuring that bontebok populations are and stay genetically diverse, and overall meta-population fitness and resilience within and outside the NDR is enhanced and maintained in the long-term.

**ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

The authors would like to express their gratitude to all those who contributed to the development and compilation of this biodiversity management plan:

- CapeNature, DEA and SANBI for hosting the first Stakeholder workshop at Tokai in November 2013.
- Participants in the Stakeholder Workshop held at Tokai (list attached as Appendix 1).
- Natalie Hayward for capturing and collating the Tokai workshop inputs
- SANParks Scientific Services and Veterinary Wildlife Group (list attached as Appendix 2).
- CapeNature Bontebok BMP-S Technical Working Group (list attached as Appendix 3).

**ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS**


---

BCTUP	Western Cape Bontebok Conservation, Translocation and Utilisation Policy – Operational Guideline
BMP-S	Biodiversity Management Plan for Species
CITES	Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora
CBD	Convention on Biological Diversity
CFR	Cape Floristic Region
CN	CapeNature
DAFF	Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
DEA	Department of Environmental Affairs
DNA	Deoxyribonucleic acid, the molecule that carries most of the genetic instructions used in the development, functioning and reproduction of all known living organisms
EC DEDEAT	Eastern Cape Department of Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism
ECPTA	Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency
ENDR	Extended Natural Distribution Range
FS DESTEA	Free State Department of Economic, Small Business Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs
IUCN	International Union for Conservation of Nature
MOU	Memorandum of Understanding
NC DENC	Northern Cape Department of Environment and Nature Conservation
NDF	Non-detriment Finding
NDR	Natural Distribution Range
NEM: BA	National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004
NEM: PAA	National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act 57 of 2003
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998
NR	Nature Reserve
NRF	National Research Foundation
PHASA	Professional Hunters Association of South Africa
SAHGCA	South African Hunters and Game Conservation Association
SANBI	South Africa National Biodiversity Institute
SANBI: NZG	South Africa National Biodiversity Institute: National Zoological Garden
SANParks	South African National Parks
SARDB	Red Data Book of the Mammals of South Africa
SAHGCA	South African Hunters & Game Conservation Association
SCI	Safari Club International
SSC	Species Survival Commission
TMF	Table Mountain Fund
ToPS	Threatened or Protected Species Regulations
ToR	Terms of Reference
WCNCB	Western Cape Nature Conservation Board
WC GDDDB	Western Cape Game Distribution Database
WC DEA & DP	Western Cape Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning
WCPAES	Western Cape Protected Area Expansion Strategy
WG1	Working Group on Biodiversity and Conservation

---



---

WRSA	Wildlife Ranching South Africa
WWF	World Wildlife Fund
WWF-SA	World Wide Fund for Nature – South Africa

---

## GLOSSARY OF DEFINITIONS, SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNICAL TERMS

In this BMP-S, unless the context indicates otherwise, a word or expression defined in the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (NEM: BA, 10 of 2004) or Protected Areas Act (NEM: PAA, 57 of 2003) has the same meaning.

Genetic diversity	Genetic diversity is the total number of genetic characteristics in the genetic makeup of a species. It is distinguished from genetic variability, which describes the tendency of genetic characteristics to vary. Genetic diversity is required for populations to adapt to environmental change. It is measured using an array of molecular and quantitative methods. Large populations of naturally outbreeding species usually have extensive genetic diversity, but it is usually reduced in populations and species of conservation concern (Frankham <i>et al.</i> 2002).
Rehabilitation	The mechanism of aiding an ecosystem to reach a functional state.
Restoration	The action of returning an ecosystem to its original state or condition, or a species to its original place.
Monitoring	The collection and analysis of repeated observations or measurements to evaluate change in status, distribution or integrity in order to track the impacts of directed management implemented to achieve a stated management objective.

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS .....</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>GLOSSARY OF DEFINITIONS, SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNICAL TERMS.....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>TABLE OF CONTENTS .....</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>LIST OF FIGURES .....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>1) INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>14</b>
1.1 Bontebok .....	14
1.2 The need for a BMP-S for bontebok .....	14
1.3 Vision and Desired state .....	15
1.4 Objectives of the BMP-S .....	16
1.5 Benefits of the BMP-S.....	16
1.6 Anticipated Outcomes .....	16
<b>2) SPECIES BIOLOGY AND BACKGROUND INFORMATION .....</b>	<b>17</b>
2.1 Species ecology and biology.....	17
2.1.1 Taxonomic description .....	17
2.1.3 Status of bontebok sub-populations .....	20
2.1.4 Genetic status of bontebok sub-populations .....	21
2.1.5 Life history and reproduction .....	22
2.1.6 Habitat requirements and resource assessment .....	23
2.1.7 Known diseases.....	23
2.2 Population statistics and trends.....	24
2.3 Research .....	25
2.4 Utilisation and socio-economic context .....	25
2.5 Conservation measures .....	26
2.5.1 Meta-population management .....	27
2.5.2 Non-detriment Finding .....	27
2.6 Conservation status and legislative context .....	28
2.6.1 International obligations .....	28
2.6.2 National legislation .....	29
2.6.3 Other relevant South African legislation .....	30
<b>3) PLANNING FRAMEWORK .....</b>	<b>32</b>
3.1 The planning context.....	32
3.2 Key role players .....	33
3.3 Stakeholder engagement .....	34
3.4 Relevant agreements .....	34
3.5 Identification of lead and implementing agencies .....	35
3.6 Expert Verification of Quality of Content and Context .....	35
<b>4) BIODIVERSITY MANAGEMENT PLAN.....</b>	<b>36</b>
4.1 Lead and implementing agencies .....	36
4.2 Identified threats and challenges .....	36
4.2.1 THREAT: Habitat alteration and fragmentation .....	36
4.2.2 THREAT: Inbreeding .....	36
4.2.3 THREAT: Hybridisation .....	36
4.2.4 THREAT: Unregulated hunting and trade .....	37
4.2.5 CHALLENGE: Implementation of effective Meta-population management .....	37
4.2.6 CHALLENGE: To provide incentives for private land owners to maintain viable sub-populations of bontebok in its natural distribution range .....	37
4.2.7 CHALLENGE: To consistently and uniformly implement legislation, policies and IUCN guidelines .....	37
4.2.8 CHALLENGE: To communicate and collaborate effectively among stakeholders .....	37

4.2.9	CHALLENGE: To overcome management and capacity constraints .....	38
4.2.10	CHALLENGE: To create awareness regarding low genetic variation and hybridisation .....	38
4.2.11	CHALLENGE: To integrate conservation planning .....	38
<b>5)</b>	<b>ACTION PLAN AND MONITORING FRAMEWORK.....</b>	<b>39</b>
5.1	OBJECTIVE 1: To conserve the genetic integrity and diversity of bontebok .....	39
5.2	OBJECTIVE 2: To prevent further habitat loss and habitat degradation, and establish and maintain historic habitat connectivity .....	43
5.3	OBJECTIVE 3: To establish and maintain effective communication and awareness between and among stakeholders .....	45
5.4	OBJECTIVE 4: To investigate and conduct research aimed at supporting ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT AND the implementation of Bontebok conservation.....	47
<b>6)</b>	<b>BONTEBOK BMP-S REPORTING FRAMEWORK.....</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>7)</b>	<b>REFERENCES .....</b>	<b>57</b>
	APPENDIX A: BONTEBOK BMP-S WORKSHOP AGENDA .....	60
	APPENDIX A: BONTEBOK BMP-S WORKSHOP PARTICIPANTS .....	61
	APPENDIX B: CONTRIBUTORS TO COMPILING THE BMP .....	62
	APPENDIX C: TEMPLATE FOR SUGGESTED EDITS/ADDITIONS/CHANGES .....	64
	APPENDIX D: ATTENDANCE REGISTER AND INVITEE LIST FOR THE ACTIONS AND RELEVANT AGREEMENTS WORKSHOP FOR THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE BONTEBOK BMP-S. ....	65
	.....	66
	APPENDIX E: VENN DIAGRAMS ON STAKEHOLDER RELATIONSHIPS TOWARDS ACHIEVING THE OBJECTIVES OF THE BMP-S: ACTIONS AND RELEVANT AGREEMENTS WORKSHOP FOR THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE BONTEBOK BMP-S.....	66
	.....	67
	.....	67
	.....	67

**LIST OF TABLES**

**Table 2.1.3:** Summary of population size estimates for bontebok (*Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*), on protected areas.

**Table 2.2.1:** Summary of population size estimates for bontebok (*Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*), both inside and outside the natural range. The percentage of mature individuals per subpopulation is provided.

**Table 3.2** Organisations that are involved in developing and implementing various aspects of the bontebok BMP-S.

**LIST OF FIGURES**

**Figure 2.1.2.1** Historical distribution of bontebok and blesbok (source: Birss *et al.* 2016).

**Figure 2.1.2.2** Natural Distribution and Benign Introduction Range for bontebok.

**Figure 2.1.3** Distribution records for bontebok sub-population per Province.

**Figure 2.1.4** Bontebok sub-population distribution and size classes in the Western Cape Province.

**Figure 3.1:** IUCN Species Survival Commission schematic for species conservation planning.

**Figure 3.2:** Strategic Adaptive Management Framework adapted from Kingsford, R.T., Biggs, H.C. and Pollard, S.R. 2010, and Strategic Adaptive Management in freshwater protected areas and their rivers. *Biological Conservation* 144, 1194-1203. doi:10.1016/j.biocon.2010.09.022.

**Figure 5:** Action Plan and Monitoring Framework derived from IUCN Species Survival Commission schematic for species conservation planning methodology applied for this BMP-S.

## 1) INTRODUCTION

Bontebok (*Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*) is a subspecies of antelope endemic to the East Coast Renosterveld bioregion within the Cape Floristic Region (CFR) of the Western Cape. As an iconic flagship species for conservation success in South Africa, it was on the verge of extinction in the early 1800s. A few animals were saved by farmers in the Bredasdorp area and a national park was proclaimed to conserve this species. Currently, the population estimate within the natural distribution range (NDR) is approximately 515 mature individuals. A loss of the natural habitat within the NDR has prompted conservation authorities to extend the natural range to nearby suitable areas within the same ecoregion. Here, subpopulations have increased to approximately 805 mature individuals. Bontebok occur on private properties in the Western, Eastern and Northern Cape Provinces as well as in the Free State and North West Province. Total population estimates of bontebok subpopulations on private land are estimated at 8100 on private land, with an estimated 1038 bontebok occurring on protected areas in the Eastern and Western Cape. Of these, less than 700 occur in the NDR. Only an estimated 220 bontebok occur on private land within the NDR, with an additional 667 potentially constituting benign introductions outside the NDR. Hybrids resulting from hybridisation with blesbok (*Damaliscus pygargus phillipsi*) are largely prevalent outside the NDR and EDR in a large proportion of subpopulations on private land.

Bontebok numbers outside the natural distribution range (NDR) are increasing, however, the core population within the NDR has not increased since 2004. Protected area expansion possibilities are limited within the NDR, thereby limiting core population growth. The major threats to bontebok are the uncertainty around the number of hybrids within the existing meta-population, lack of habitat availability within its natural range (thus limiting population expansion), and the lack of a meta-population plan to sustain genetic diversity. Given that the estimated population sizes are still very low, a management plan is required to guide the genetic testing, data capturing, management and protection of this species for future South African generations.

### 1.1 Bontebok

Bontebok is a medium-sized antelope with a multi-coloured coat, is endemic to the Western Cape and was historically confined to the grassy southern coastal plains and Renosterveld of the CFR. Population numbers of bontebok reached a critical low in the 1930s when only approximately 17 animals remained. The Bontebok National Park was proclaimed in the Bredasdorp district in 1931 to protect the species (Barnard and van der Walt 1961). Although bontebok numbers increased to around 100, population growth thereafter halted as the habitat of the park was found to be unsuitable for this species. In the 1940s, five animals were sent to Grahamstown to establish a population elsewhere in the then Cape Province as a back-up against the loss of the populations in the Bredasdorp area (Van Rensburg 1975).

In 1961, the Bontebok National Park moved to the present site in the Swellendam area and the bontebok were transferred from the original park as well as 16 animals from Grahamstown (Thornkloof Farm). Additional animals from Thornkloof were also sent to De Hoop Nature Reserve and Cape Point Nature Reserve (now Table Mountain National Park). In the 'new' Bontebok National Park, numbers increased to a maximum of over 400 in the 1980s with the current population being approximately 260, with a further 197 in other National Parks. Bontebok National Park can no longer expand in size to accommodate a larger bontebok population.

### 1.2 The need for a BMP-S for bontebok

Bontebok have a very limited NDR and is endemic to the Western Cape. There are about 515 mature individuals left in the NDR. The founding population numbers were very low and have been through a severe genetic bottleneck, hence their genetic diversity is threatened through loss of genetically fit animals. With the historic establishment of bontebok population outside the NDR in the EDR and Eastern Cape, Northern Cape and Free State, and elsewhere, and the rather limited opportunity for bontebok population expansion inside the NDR, there is a need for coordinated and adaptive management of the bontebok meta-population to ensure the long term survival of and mitigate negative impacts on the subspecies.

Of the vegetation types that bontebok antelope originally occurred in, more than 50% are Critically Endangered with a further approximately 20% either Endangered or Vulnerable, resulting in 70% of their habitat being under threat. Also, very little of these vegetation types where they occur is left in the agriculture-dominated landscape, and renosterveld habitats in general within the NDR have been reduced to <10% of their original extent. Furthermore, there is a significant risk of hybridisation with the closely-related blesbok antelope, which if not actively prevented, could result in the extinction of this subspecies as a taxon.

Bontebok are an iconic flagship species for conservation of the CFR, the Fynbos Biome, threatened landscapes and threatened plant populations. Bontebok are listed as Vulnerable by the IUCN Species Survival Commission (SSC), in their IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. They are also listed as a Protected Species under the Threatened or Protected Species (TOPS) regulations in terms of Section 56 (1)d of the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (Act 10 of 2004), and listed in Appendix II under the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES). The non-detriment finding for bontebok issued by the Scientific Authority recommended a BMP-S to improve the management and monitoring of the subspecies.

Bontebok play an ecological role in the creation of landscape heterogeneity through grazing (Kraaij and Novellie 2010; Novellie 1987) via the creation of grazing lawns (Cowling et al. 1986; Krug et al. 2004) and the modification of and use of fire regimes (Kraaij and Novellie 2010; Krug et al. 2004; Luyt 2005; Novellie 1987). They are also hosts for parasites (Boomker and Horak 1992; Boomker et al. 1983; Boomker 1990; Horak and Boomker 1998; Horak et al. 1982; Horak et al. 1997) and contribute to our ecological knowledge through their genetic uniqueness, as one can establish the passage in time since divergence from a common ancestor (Essop et al. 1991; Fabricius et al. 1989; Fabricius 1991; Kumamoto et al. 1996; Van der Walt et al. 2001).

### 1.3 Vision and Desired state

The purpose of a BMP-S is to ensure the long term survival in nature of species which are listed under the TOPS Regulations (published in terms of the National Environmental: Biodiversity Act) or where a BMP is deemed necessary for a particular species. The scope of this plan has been identified by a stakeholder group as a National Plan, due to the human-induced distribution of bontebok across South Africa.

During the bontebok BMP-S Development Workshop the participants expressed their view of the desired state for bontebok as:

***“The conservation of a secure and well managed\* bontebok meta-population.”***

***\* Well managed: an increase in pure Bontebok numbers especially in their indigenous range, sustainable use of habitat and species, securing genetic integrity, researched and regulated to inform decision making and planning.***

This Desired State is aimed at creating a long term Vision for successful conservation of this species and this is to be achieved by a set of associated Objectives. These objectives capture the operational details of how to go about realising the long term conservation of bontebok. Each objective has a set of associated Targets which in turn are given a time frame.

The workshop ensured that each Objective and associated Target were aimed at the long term survival of the species in the wild. The populations were scrutinised holistically to avoid irreplaceable loss in the event that one or more populations are lost due to unforeseen, possibly unavoidable catastrophes, and ecological functionality was not lost by conserving small isolated populations but rather large robust ones. Lastly the Objectives and Targets were developed to include human socio-economic and cultural needs and desires, in a manner consistent with the Norms and Standards for BMP-S. This plan recognises that populations within and outside the NDR can contribute to the conservation of the species as long as owners and managers of bontebok populations contribute to the meta-population Plan for this species and as guided by the Guidelines

for Using the IUCN Red List Categories and Criteria, Version 12, February 2016. Wild populations are those populations inside the NDR and may include populations outside the NDR which meet all the IUCN criteria. Managed sub-populations dependent on conservation measures that are largely directed at mitigating human impacts may be considered “wild” and included in the conservation assessments provided that bontebok would not go extinct in the absence of “intensive management”.

#### **1.4 Objectives of the BMP-S**

The prioritised Strategic Objectives of the bontebok BMP-S are as follows.

- To conserve the genetic integrity and diversity of bontebok;
- To prevent further habitat loss and habitat degradation, and establish and maintain historic habitat connectivity;
- To establish and maintain effective communication and awareness between and among stakeholders; and
- To investigate and conduct research aimed at supporting adaptive management and the implementation of actions to promote and ensure bontebok conservation.

#### **1.5 Benefits of the BMP-S**

The foreseen benefits of implementing this BMP-S are:

- Ensuring the bontebok meta-population inside and outside (nationally) the NDR increases and is resilient to threats faced;
- Ensuring that harvesting and off-takes of bontebok are sustainable;
- Scientific sound meta-population management is implemented and through this the full extent of genetic diversity is represented throughout the population;
- To facilitate the establishment and maintenance of a National Database to advise on the status of populations;
- Identify priority conservation land for bontebok conservation within the NDR;
- Promote collaboration and cooperation between government agencies as well as between government and the private sector;
- Coordinated management actions; and
- Identify accountable parties and clearly define roles and responsibilities.

#### **1.6 Anticipated Outcomes**

The anticipated outcomes of the management plan are as follows:

- The management of the bontebok population in and outside the NDR to ensure the long term survival of this subspecies;
- A co-ordinated national approach to bontebok conservation in and outside of the NDR in terms of management, monitoring and research;
- The halt of the loss of habitat and ultimately ensure a steady increase in conserved habitat and rehabilitation of degraded areas for re-introduction of bontebok within the NDR;
- Highlight research and communication priorities and identify appropriate parties to implement actions;
- A National Database of population distributions and national testing and profiling protocols for bontebok;
- The identification and immediate elimination of hybrids of this species to maintain the economic and conservation value of bontebok; and
- Promotion of bontebok as an iconic flagship conservation species for Renosterveld vegetation, the CFR and the World Heritage Sites found there.



## 2) SPECIES BIOLOGY AND BACKGROUND INFORMATION

### 2.1 Species ecology and biology

#### 2.1.1 Taxonomic description

**Taxon name:** *Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*

**Common names:** Bontebok

**Taxonomic level:** Subspecies *pygargus*

The genus *Damaliscus* consists of two subspecies, namely blesbok (*D. pygargus phillipsi*) and bontebok (*D. pygargus pygargus*), belonging to the Alcelaphini Tribe (Van Wyk et al. 2012; Vrba 1979). Climatic and geological changes in the distant past resulted in a split between the two sub-species of *Damaliscus pygargus*.

Bontebok are medium-sized antelope measuring 80 to 100 cm at the shoulder. Adult males have a mean mass of 61 kg and females weigh less and are slightly smaller. Both males and females carry black ridged horns that curve backward and outward and then slightly forward towards the unridged tips. The horns of the females are more slender and generally lack the thickening at the base as in the case of the males. Adult males are generally darker in colour with their white scrotums being conspicuous (Skinner and Chimimba 2005). The back is rust brown, with the rest of the body dark brown to nearly black and the underside white. The sides of the face and neck, the flanks and the upper parts of the limbs are glossed purple (the purple gloss is absent in blesbok). The front of the face is white from the base of the horns to the nose, with variation in some animals (< 20%) where a brown band divides the face blaze. There is a distinctive white patch at the base of the tail which is light brown in blesbok.

#### 2.1.2 Distribution of bontebok

##### *Historic*

A significant body of evidence exists globally indicating that recurring, multi-scale climate change events (glacials and interglacials), interlaced with marine regressions and transgressions, and interacting with oscillating and contingent environmental change during the Early ( $\pm 2.6$  Million years ago; Mya) to Late ( $\pm 11.7$  Thousand years ago; kya) Pleistocene, have shaped not only the southern African landscape observed today, but has also led to multiple shifts in the floral and faunal components of these landscapes (e.g. Steele 2007; Faith and Behrensmeyer 2013; Carr, Chase and Mackay 2016; Hoag and Svenning 2017; Helm et al. 2018). Steele (2007) records that for African landscapes, arid habitats expanded during cool, dry periods, and contracted again when more moisture was available and this led to repeated fragmentation of natural habitats and ecosystems, which isolated plants and animals, and their habitats, leading to an increase in biodiversity. According to this paper an essentially modern fauna was present in southern Africa by approximately 270 kya. The changes in faunal communities in response to Late Pleistocene glacial cycles are best documented along the southern and west coasts of South Africa (Klein 1980, in Steele 2007), and most notably is the overwhelming abundance of grazing species, especially equids and alcelaphines (hartebeest, wildebeest and antelope allies). As demonstrated at Nelson Bay Cave (modern-day Eastern Cape), around 18.5 -12 kya, the fauna on the southern coast of South Africa were dominated by grazing ungulates, including quagga, alcelaphines (hartebeest, wildebeest and allies), long-horned buffalo and springbok; species preferring open habitats. Steele (2007) notes that none of these taxa were present in the vicinity of the site historically, indicating that open grasslands were much more common during this period (18.5 -12 kya) than historically. Importantly, it should be noted that this period follows the Last Glacial Maximum (21 kya) during which the marine regression and reduced sea levels exposed a broad southern coastal plain or "palaeo-Agulhas Bank" of around 60,000 km<sup>2</sup> (Faith and Behrensmeyer 2013). Bathymetric evidence (Compton 2011) exists that large mammals would have been allowed to migrate from and between this southern coastal plain and the western coastal plain (modern-day Swartland-West Coast region) around modern-day Cape Hangklip and the Cape Peninsula in the West, as well as between the interior and the exposed southern coastal plain in the East (modern-day Eastern Cape) (Faith and Behrensmeyer 2013) facilitated by the approximately 40-60 km wide coastal portal near modern-day Plettenberg Bay (Compton 2011). Palaeo-environmental records, independent of the large mammal assemblages, provide evidence for the expansion on the southern coastal

plain of grasslands, while fossil evidence indicates that the large mammal community was species-rich and dominated by large grazing ungulates, including equids and alcelaphine antelopes (Klein 1983; Klein and Cruz-Urbe 1987; Rector and Reed 2010; Faith 2011).

Turning attention to subsequent events on the exposed palaeo-Agulhas Bank, Compton (2011) records that rapidly rising sea levels during the period following the Last Glacial Maximum created vicariance events by flooding and isolating the southern coastal plain from both the western coastal plain in the West and the interior to the East with a subsequent altered rainfall regime and the contraction of grasslands. The fossil record shows the replacement of open-habitat grazers by small browsing species typical of the Cape Floristic Region shrublands, resulting in an essentially modern fauna in place by approximately 5,000 years ago (Klein 1983; Faith 2012).

In testing their third prediction that “Lineages adapted to open grassland habitats will be characterized by elevated incidences of extinction and speciation over the long term.”, Faith and Behrensmeyer (2013) state that this would result from the repeated expansion and contraction of grassland habitats during glacial-interglacial cycles together with the isolation of grassland species on the southern coastal plain during marine transgressions.

They found that while bias towards extinctions among alcelaphines and antilopines is significant in the Cape Floristic Region, although evidence is abundant (loss of 23% of ungulates since the Last Glacial Maximum), “the CFR record provides only one example for the origination of a new taxon, and only at the subspecies level. *Damaliscus dorcas* is an open-habitat grazer that includes two allopatric subspecies: bontebok (*Damaliscus dorcas dorcas*), which is endemic to the CFR, and blesbok (*D. dorcas phillipsi*), which is found in the South African interior.” [Note taxonomic change: *Damaliscus dorcas dorcas* = *Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*; *Damaliscus dorcas phillipsi* = *Damaliscus pygargus phillipsi*] (Grubb 1993).

Further evidence indicates that *D. dorcas* (= *pygargus*) first emerged in the interior of South Africa around the early Pleistocene ( $\pm 1.4$  Mya) (Vrba 1997; Sutton et al. 2009) and later migrated to the Cape Floristic Region during a middle Pleistocene marine regression, when the so-called “eastern portal” must have facilitated this migration. In support, the earliest record of *D. dorcas* in the Cape Floristic Region dates back to approximately 151,000 years ago (end of the middle Pleistocene). Faith and Behrensmeyer (2013) accordingly conclude that the subsequent isolation of faunal assemblages on the southern coastal plain during “interglacial highstands” allowed allopatric divergence at the subspecies level.

There is currently no evidence that the historic distribution range of the bontebok (in its current form and taxonomic status; *Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*) included either the western coastal plain or the grassland interior of the modern-day Eastern Cape Province. Steele (2007) concludes that “... in the fossil record, species are found in places where today their descendants live hundreds, if not thousands, of kilometres away, indicating that their past ranges were either completely shifted to different location or expanded to encompass new locations.”

It therefore stands to reason that, based on currently available palaeontological, fossil and other scientific evidence, bontebok in its current form and taxonomic status is a result of multiple and recurring climate change events, resulting in marine regressions and transgressions on the South African southern coastal plain and surrounds, eventually allowing for and resulting in the allopatric speciation of this endemic taxon to the modern-day Western Cape Province of South Africa.

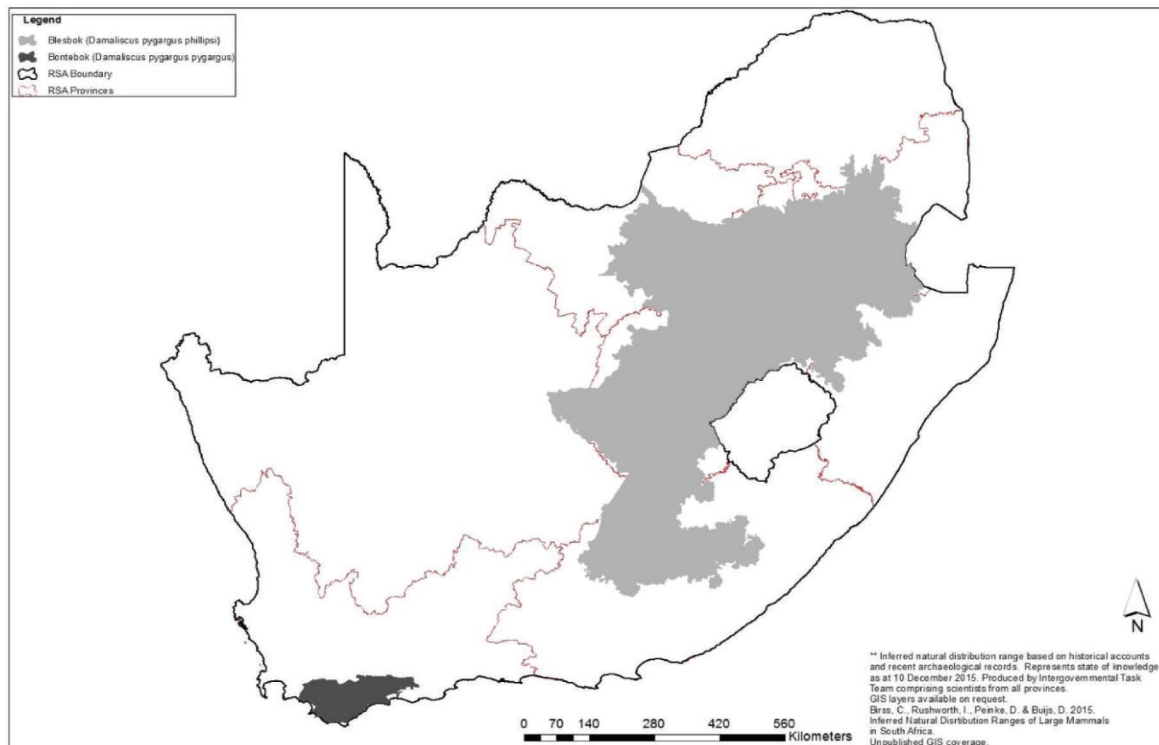
#### Recent

Currently their natural distribution range consists of vegetation types which are Critically Endangered, Endangered or Vulnerable. Suitable natural habitat within the NDR is thus limited to the remaining Renosterveld patches in the Overberg region between 60–200 m above sea level. In the NDR the population is fragmented into small subpopulations restricted by fences. The NDR for bontebok is delineated in Figure 2.1.2.2.

The *Guidelines for Using the IUCN Red List Categories and Criteria, Version 12*, make provision for the acknowledgement of including benign introductions outside the NDR to contribute to the conservation of the species according to a set of criteria: sub-populations within the same ecoregion may be included. Due to the status and limited availability of habitat for bontebok within the NDR, benign introductions are required. This

range is referred to as the extended natural distribution range (ENDR). This has enabled additional utilisation of this species by private land owners and the creation of a buffer population from which to augment populations within the NDR and thus contribute to a meta-population management approach.

NATURAL DISTRIBUTION RANGES: Bontebok and Blesbok



**Figure 2.1.2.1** Historical distribution of bontebok and blesbok (source: Birss *et al.* 2015).

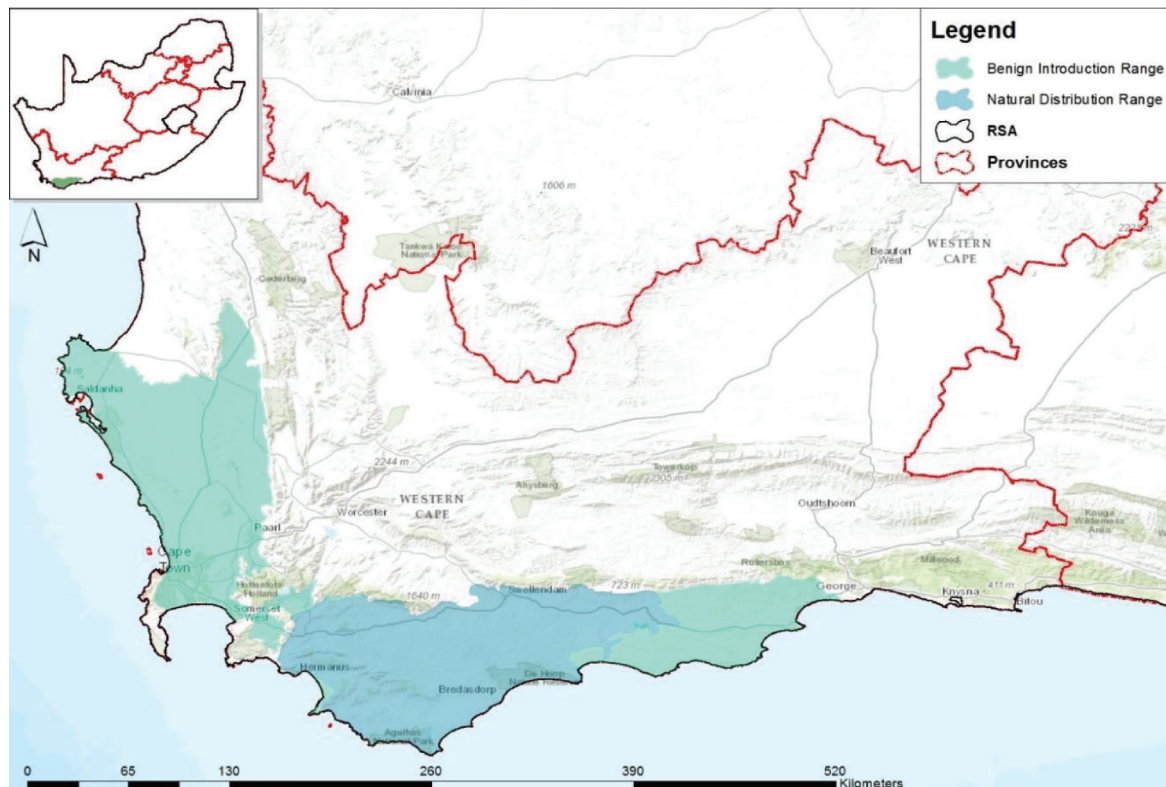


Figure 2.1.2.2 Natural Distribution and Benign Introduction Range for bontebok.

### 2.1.3 Status of bontebok sub-populations

Historically, conservation organisations in South Africa aimed to promote the conservation and sustainable use of bontebok populations on sufficient habitat within the NDR. The threatened status and limited availability of habitat for bontebok within the NDR necessitated the extension of their range according to the IUCN criteria, thereby enabling additional utilisation of this species by private land owners and the creation of a buffer population from which to augment populations within the NDR and contribute to a meta-population management approach. Today bontebok occur in a number of protected areas both in and outside the NDR. These include Bontebok, Table Mountain and West Coast National Parks (all genetically tested), De Hoop Nature Reserve and Denel Overberg Test Range (largest subpopulation within the natural range), and Tsolwana Nature Reserve in the Eastern Cape Province.

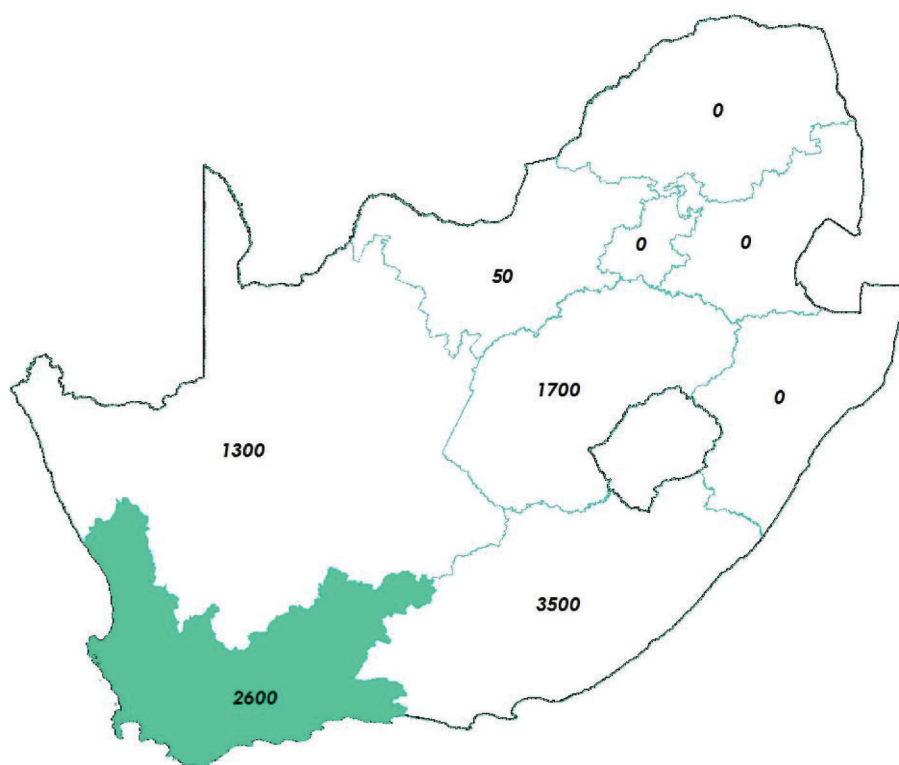
The total estimated population of Bontebok on government-managed protected areas is 885 individuals. Of these, 457 occur in the South African National Parks' (SANParks) four parks (Agulhas, Bontebok, Table Mountain and West Coast National Parks). The combined population for De Hoop Nature Reserve and the Overberg Test Range is estimated at about 444 individuals. Estimates place the population number within the indigenous range at  $\pm 905$  animals across both protected areas (Table 2.1.3) and on private land. Approximately 2610 animals occur in the Western Cape Province and a total of approximately 9150 is distributed throughout South Africa (Figure 2.1.3).

**Table 2.1.3:** Summary of population size estimates for bontebok (*Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*), on protected areas

Property Name	Property Type	Management Authority / Conservation Agency	In Natural Distribution Range	Population Estimate
---------------	---------------	--	-------------------------------	---------------------



Table Mountain National Park	Protected Area	SANParks	No	93
Bontebok National Park	Protected Area	SANParks	Yes	190
West Coast National Park	Protected Area	SANParks	Yes (ENDR)	75
De Hoop Nature Reserve – Overberg Test Range	Protected Area	CapeNature	Yes	499
Tsolwana Nature Reserve	Protected Area	Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency	No	181



**Figure 2.1.3** Distribution records for bontebok sub-populations per Province.

#### 2.1.4 Genetic status of bontebok sub-populations

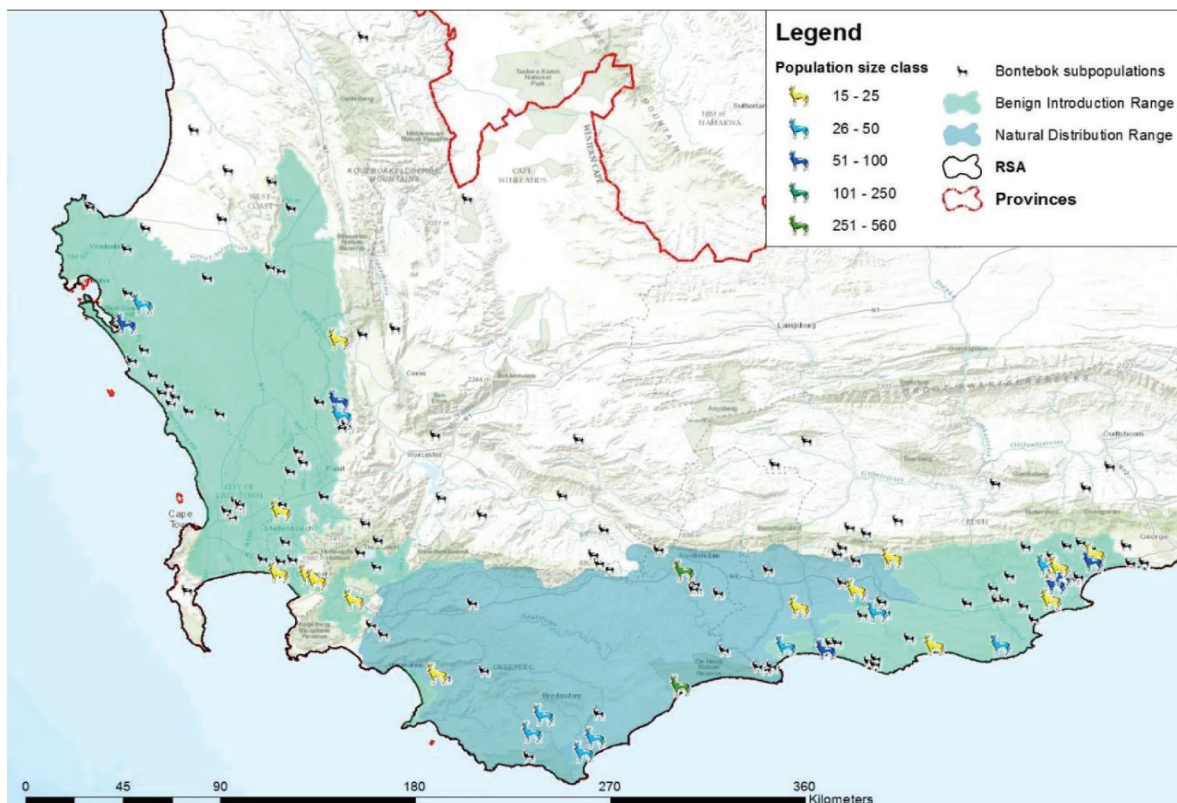
Genetic diversity, the primary component of adaptive evolution, is essential for the long-term survival of a population. Previous genetic studies indicate low genetic diversity, population fragmentation and hybridisation with blesbok, (Van Wyk *et al.* 2016; Van Wyk *et al.* 2012). Secondary, artificial contact between the two subspecies, brought about through translocations, resulted in deliberate and accidental hybridisation. A recent study by Van Wyk *et al.* 2016 investigated the hybridisation rates in animals sampled across South Africa and found that approximately 25% of the samples were hybrids, but more importantly, also found that approximately 67% of the localities sampled contained hybrids. The study also found that these hybrids were

predominantly a result of secondary hybridisation between hybrids and either bontebok or blesbok, with no first generation hybrids detected.

Apart from the low genetic diversity and prevalence of hybridisation, the genetic integrity of bontebok is further threatened by biased selection pressures for trophy and or breeding animals, which are managed for high production outputs. Stocking rates and sex ratios which favour high production outputs are favoured. The majority of subpopulations on private land are small (<15 animals) and have sex ratios of 1:3 to 1:7 (males:females). Maintaining an acceptable inbreeding coefficient in populations, requires the maintenance of an effective population size of 50 animals, stocked at a 1:1 ratio (Allendorf *et al.* 2001; Du Toit *et al.* 2010; Frankham *et al.* 2002).

Figure 2.1.4 indicates the distribution of bontebok sub-populations in the Western Cape Province and highlight those subpopulations larger than 15 animals in the NDR and EDR. A maximum of 1892 animals occur in 33 subpopulations (of which only 7 have been genetically tested to contain no hybrids).

Detailed information on the status of all bontebok subpopulations in South Africa is not currently available but the establishment of a centralised georeferenced genetics database for bontebok has been identified as an action to pursue to effect the outcomes of the BMP-S.



**Figure 2.1.4** Bontebok sub-population distribution and size classes in the Western Cape Province.

### 2.1.5 Life history and reproduction

Bontebok are sedentary-dispersed in that populations segregate into female and bachelor herds with permanent territorial networks (Estes 1992). Female home ranges typically include 2 – 3 territories and territorial males almost always accompany a herd. Territorial males tolerate yearling males, while large bachelor herds form without fixed home ranges, inhibiting dispersal. Male territories range from 4 – 40 hectares with an average spacing of 300 meters between males. Territories are resource based, in other

words, grazing lawn territories are demarcated with dung middens. This is only done by mature males, who only defend activity centers, leaving large areas where bachelor males can circulate with little or no harassment. Social structure consists of the territorial males, female herds and bachelor groups. Young males leave the female herd of their own accord at 12 months and can remain solitary but usually join bachelor groups until sexual maturity around 5 years of age. Older males are displaced from their territories and often find refuge within a bachelor group. There is no hierarchy in a bachelor group and fighting is rare. Territorial battles between rams are ritualistic and bouts end when either ram walks away or when one is chased off. This is true of large populations in natural free roaming areas but in smaller populations with restricted area, ram deaths due to fighting are known to occur, as well as rams killing their own male offspring (M. D'Alton 2016, personal communication).

The bontebok is a short-day seasonal breeder and the conception rate is influenced by rainfall before the breeding season (Novellie 1986). Gestation is approximately 240 days and single lambs are born in spring and early summer when females do not isolate from herds. Bontebok have a follower-calf strategy – calves are not hidden but follow mothers within minutes (Skinner and Chimimba 2005). Females become sexually mature at just over 2 years of age and have their first lambs at about 3 years old. A hierarchy exists in the female herd and status is obtained by threat postures and battling with horns. Female herds typically consist of 8 females and their yearlings and are visited by males during the breeding season (Skinner and Chimimba 2005). In captivity bontebok have been known to live for up to 15 years.

#### **2.1.6 Habitat requirements and resource assessment**

Bontebok show an exclusive preference for grazing on short grass in the low-lying, grassy coastal plains and Renosterveld within the CFR and Fynbos Biome biodiversity hotspot (Myers et al. 2000). Due to major transformation of this part of the biome (Margules 2000), suitable habitat for bontebok is limited to the remaining Renosterveld patches in the NDR. Bontebok avoids tall woody vegetation with low visibility and areas with steep slopes, preferring open areas with low shrubs (Novellie 1987). Fragmented populations are currently found primarily on sub-optimal habitat and old cultivated lands where they appear to do relatively well.

Research conducted in Bontebok National Park and the Cape of Good Hope Section of Table Mountain National Park found that bontebok has a clear preference for recently burnt veld and fire breaks (Strauss 2015). They utilise veld up to four or five years following fire and then revert to grazing lawns made up of *Cynodon dactylon*. Although predominantly short grass grazers, bontebok have been known to browse small shrubs and restios. They need to drink regularly and are dependent on accessibility of drinking water in the dry, hot summer (Luyt 2005).

Preliminary investigations indicate that certain protected areas may have reached their stocking rate limits for bontebok. Some areas are limited by size and others by competition with other herbivorous species competing for resources. However, there are protected areas within the NDR with suitable habitat for bontebok and which can contribute to future conservation goals of this species (for example, Agulhas National Park).

Ideally, conservation areas should be large with sufficient varied habitats to sustain populations throughout summer and winter (Penzhorn 1971; Penzhorn and Novellie 1991). Given the success of bontebok on old lands, it has been suggested that in order to mitigate changing land use and climate, the use of old agricultural areas may be suitable for stocking bontebok (M. D'Alton 2016, personal communication). It was also highlighted that habitat selection (including availability) must not be viewed in isolation since water, mineral licks, shelter, as well as social factors, are also known to influence habitat use in large herbivore species (Winkler and Owen-Smith 1995). There appears to be considerable scope for increasing the area and number of sub-populations of bontebok in the NDR and ENDR that can contribute to the meta-population.

#### **2.1.7 Known diseases**

The survival of the bontebok has been threatened by parasites throughout its management history. Barnard & Van der Walt (1961) reported on severe verminosis in bontebok while located at Bredasdorp, and that Conical Fluke (*Paramphistomum* sp.), Wireworm (*Haemonchus* sp.), Brown Stomach Worm (*Ostertagia*) and



Bankrupt Worm (*Trichostrongylus* sp.) were found in great numbers (Zumpt and Heine 1978). Bontebok is also known to show a general weakness and signs of ataxia in spite of them appearing to be in reasonable condition (Barnard and van der Walt 1961). This is thought to be related to nutrient deficiencies. A series of studies was done by the Onderstepoort Veterinary Research Institute which identified parasites (Helminths, Arthropods, Nematodes, and Ixodid ticks) found in bontebok, in Bontebok National Park in Swellendam (Boomker and Horak 1992; Boomker et al. 1983; Boomker 1990; Horak and Boomker 1998; Horak et al. 1982; Horak et al. 1997; Horak et al. 1986; Ortlepp 1962; Verster et al. 1975). A 10-year study of Ixodid tick infestations in Bontebok National Park showed that bontebok harboured eight species, none of which were alien species, despite translocations having occurred and the presence of alien species outside the park (Horak et al. 1997). Another study established that first stage larvae of a fly species (a large *Gedoesia* sp.) found in the nasal sinuses of bontebok can cause severe ocular lesions in the eyes of abnormal hosts, such as grey rhebok (Horak et al. 1982). Pulpy kidney (*Clostridium*) has been known to cause high mortalities in bontebok which were kept in bomas for long periods of time (Dalton 2016, personal communication).

Nematodes primarily colonizing the lung (lungworms), including *Pneumostrongylus* sp and *Muellerris capillaris*, have been reported in antelope species including bontebok. Mortalities in bontebok have been described with *P. cornigerus* infection. *Bronchonema magna* (*Dictyocaulus magna*) is non-pathogenic in its natural host springbok but does induce pathology in contact species such as bontebok. Under free-ranging conditions and established populations, such as Bontebok National Park, these infestations are sub-clinical and mortalities as a direct result of lungworms are rarely recorded. During periods of capture and relocation these infestations can become clinical as a result of stress-induced immunosuppression.

The lungworm *Dictyocaulus magna* was not recorded from bontebok before they were transferred to Swellendam. During 1960, 20 springbok were also introduced and *D. magna*, "... a well-known parasite of the springbok ..." (Verster et al. 1975) was undoubtedly introduced at the same time. In this case, the introduction of springbok into the BNP, beyond their original range was not only ill-conceived but proved to be detrimental to the bontebok (de Graaff and Penzhorn 1976).

## 2.2 Population statistics and trends

Successful conservation action for bontebok in the NDR and ENDR within the Western Cape has seen the numbers of this subspecies increase to a current estimate of about 1650 individuals. Assuming a 70% mature population structure, about 1150 of these are mature individuals with 46% of these individuals occurring on protected areas (Table 2.2.1) in contrast to private properties. A further 7500 individuals survive on properties outside the NDR of the species throughout South Africa. Bontebok are tolerant of human activities and adapt to changes in the landscape and readily utilise transformed landscapes with old fields of short grass areas.

The major threats to this species are the availability of habitat within its natural range (thus limiting population expansion) and potential hybridisation with introduced blesbok. These threats need to be managed through a sound, scientifically-informed management policy. At present, the population in the NDR is not increasing significantly.

**Table 2.2.1:** Summary of population size estimates for bontebok (*Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*), both inside and outside the natural range. The percentage of mature individuals per subpopulation is provided.

Province	Type	Inside natural distribution range	No of reserves / properties	Subpopulation total (2013-2015)	Mature 75%
Western Cape	FP	Yes	4	686	515
Western Cape	PR	Yes	17	219	164
Western Cape	FP	No	2	199	149
Western Cape	PR	No	124	1506	1130
Eastern Cape	FP	No	1	181	136

Eastern Cape	PR	No	68	2605	1954
Northern Cape	PR	No	27	1251	938
Free State	PR	No	22	812	609
North West	PR	No	1	8	6
Grand total	All	Both	266	7467	5227
Total natural range	FP	Yes	4	686	515
Total natural / extended natural range	FP	Both	6	885	664
Total inside natural range	FP+PR	Yes	21	905	679

“FP” refers to formally protected areas while “PR” refers to private properties. “Private” includes privately protected areas, wildlife ranches or game farms.

### 2.3 Research

Research on the bontebok has been sporadic over the years with the majority of research conducted from 1970-1990. A scientific literature review produced a list of important research findings, outcomes and recommendations to be taken into account in designing action plans for this BMP-S. Numerous topics relating to and including bontebok have been studied. Aspects well-studied were bontebok life history, demography, population dynamics, genetic purity/distinctiveness, feeding ecology, fecundity, reproduction, territorial behaviour, mating and drinking behaviour, parasitology, and the sex pheromones from the pedal gland of bontebok (Burger et al. 1976.; Burger et al. 1977; Fujimoto et al. 1991; Kovalev et al. 1986). These research findings and recommendations are incorporated into the relevant sections of this document. Appendix 3 is a table of all research conducted on or related to bontebok.

The South African National Biodiversity Institute: National Zoological Gardens (SANBI: NZG), a formerly declared National Research Facility of the National Research Foundation (NRF) since 2004, is uniquely placed to generate new knowledge, core technologies and data pools/collections commensurate with international standards. In its role as a national research facility, the SANBI: NZG assist agencies and organisations, in collaboration, to fulfil their collective mandates for the conservation of biodiversity, ultimately enhancing the collective efforts in southern Africa for the conservation of regional biodiversity (Kotze and Nxomani 2011). The SANBI: NZG has built up a unique resource to conduct and promote molecular genetic research in Africa, in response to a need to understand the relationships between the degree of genetic diversity, molecular diagnostics, phylogenetics and genetic factors that determine population viability of threatened species as a result of habitat fragmentation. National genetic databases have been established for a variety of species, including bontebok. The implementation of effective meta-population management for bontebok aimed at conserving and maximising genetic diversity of the meta-population, is heavily reliant on the undertaking to implement focussed applied research in partnership with the SANBI: NZG and other research institutions.

### 2.4 Utilisation and socio-economic context

Historically, the bontebok had restricted distribution to the coastal plains of the Western Cape. Here, according to Skead (1980) bontebok were almost totally destroyed by hunters in the late 1700 to 1800s. Excessive hunting and habitat loss has reduced the population to a few individuals by the late 1930s. A concerted conservation effort by local farmers and conservation authorities resulted in the declaration of the Bontebok National Park and the establishment of bontebok populations in the Western and Eastern Cape provinces. This charismatic species is much loved by South Africans and is often seen as an iconic species for conservation efforts.

The South African game ranching and hunting industry contributes significantly to the South African economy (Furstenburg 2016). However, the role of wildlife ranching is not prominent in the NDR of bontebok. The landowners within the natural range who want to contribute to the conservation of bontebok are affected by

the bontebok industry outside of the NDR: (1) the value of the species has increased in the last five years and the demand for exports from the NDR have increased. As a result, they cannot afford to buy and stock bontebok; and (2) with the increased demand more landowners are willing to stock bontebok to breed them and supply the industry.

Judicious management and export of bontebok from the NDR is needed to ensure that the meta-population is not negatively impacted. Evidence shows that bontebok and blesbok have been crossbred for trophy hunting purposes (Lindsey et al. 2007), mainly in the form of colour morphs and extended horn lengths. The threat of hybrid and artificial colour morph selection must be addressed to conserve the integrity of this iconic species (Gray 1971).

Bontebok are currently exported live or hunted both in- and outside the NDR. Live exports impede the contributions to the conservation of bontebok in the NDR. The Western Cape Province Nature Conservation Ordinance No. 19 of 1974 lists bontebok as Protected Wild Animal. This implies that private landowners may be issued with Certificates of Adequate Enclosure (exemptions) for bontebok, implying that every activity (harvest/hunt/export) is not regulated but exempted from separate applications. Given the limited genetic diversity of bontebok, a strict harvest regime needs to be set in place to prevent genetic loss or contamination and possible eventual extinction. Harvesting activities on private land are mainly for eco-tourism, trophy hunting and breeding of trophy animals.

Careful management of the natural veld is needed in the NDR as improved grass cover for bontebok grazing may negatively impact plant species diversity in the Renosterveld (Novellie and Kraaij 2010).

## 2.5 Conservation measures

The NDR for bontebok is in the Western Cape, with CapeNature the provincial conservation authority of the Western Cape Province. The aim of the Western Cape Bontebok Conservation, Translocation and Utilisation Policy (BCTUP) aims to ensure the conservation and sustainable use of bontebok within the NDR, supplemented by sound meta-population management, supporting the improvement and rehabilitation of contiguous available habitat and effective mitigation of the threat of hybridisation with blesbok.

A phenotypic test was developed by Fabricius *et al.* (1989), and titled: "*A discriminant function for identifying hybrid Bontebok X Blesbok populations.*" The method allows for the identification of hybrid populations and in some cases hybrid individuals. The characteristics chosen as criteria emphasised the importance of the white buttocks, upper legs and belly. Hybrid animals were expected to show some features of each subspecies but it was not expected that all hybrid populations/individuals will be rejected using this test. Using this phenotypic test, bontebok purity certificates were issued for tested populations. The United States Fish and Wildlife accepted these purity certificates as verification for issuing hunting trophy import permits. Shortfalls in the certification process allowed for hybrid animals to be taken as trophies as these hybrid animals may be larger animals (in the case of bontebok). This has a potential to influence the standards set by Safari Club International (SCI). The reliability of the phenotypic test to consistently identify hybrid individual animals and populations is no longer supported by CapeNature as well as the DEDEAT (Eastern Cape). During a National Workshop on Bontebok Purity Testing and Management held in 2009, the NZG of South Africa was mandated to further develop a scientifically defensible genetic test for bontebok and blesbok hybridisation using microsatellite (DNA) markers. The genetic test developed by researchers at the NZG (Van Wyk et al. 2013) is supported by peer reviewed scientific publications and forms the basis for the update of the CapeNature policy and the development of the WRSA protocols.

Bontebok currently occur in 3 national parks (Bontebok, Table Mountain and West Coast National Park) and one nature reserve (De Hoop Nature Reserve) within the NDR and ENDR. In 2014 DNA testing of all four subpopulations was started. After confirmed purity of all three subpopulations in SANParks it undertook to translocate 5 rams between the three parks to mimic gene flow between populations and it is envisaged that this will be rolled out to include De Hoop Nature Reserve in the future. All animals sold from Bontebok and Table Mountain National Parks to private land owners have also been tested.

### 2.5.1 Meta-population management

The implementation of meta-population management processes may improve the persistence of mammals in fragmented habitats (Olivier et al. 2009). A meta-population is defined as a group of geographically isolated populations of the same species that may exchange individuals through dispersal, migration or, when implemented as a management strategy, human-controlled movement and the availability of empty habitats that are largely connected (Hanski 1999; Olivier et al. 2009). Human interventions become necessary when individuals no longer have the ability to immigrate, emigrate and recolonise empty patches (Akçakaya et al. 2007). Where extensive areas are needed to hold a viable population, a managed meta-population approach has been proposed for large herbivores in South Africa, (Elmhagen and Angerbjörn 2001). However, when there are small isolated populations with a high extinction risk, discrete habitat patches large enough to hold breeding sub-populations (Hanski 1999) are needed in conjunction with ecological processes working at both local and regional (meta-population) scales (Hanski 1999). A managed meta-population approach can then be used to prevent inbreeding problems (Elmhagen and Angerbjörn 2001).

In 2007 Akçakaya et al. proposed that conservation needs to adopt the meta-population approach and concepts enabling the assessment of the persistence of a species that happens to exist in a meta-population, either naturally or due to habitat loss and fragmentation. It must be noted that the demographic properties of subpopulations in different population networks must be investigated on a case by case basis in order to contribute to the conservation and management of large mammals in fragmented habitats (Elmhagen and Angerbjörn 2001). It must be acknowledged that not all populations with patchy distributions and some degree of connectivity are meta-populations. Conservation should seek to mimic dispersal through reintroduction and translocation, and the establishment of habitat corridors by conserving or restoring the habitat between existing populations to increase dispersal.

Effective meta-population management for bontebok by the various conservation agencies involved from each province where bontebok occur, should aim to conserve the allelic diversity by promoting and maintaining genetic diversity within and between the relevant sub-populations of the meta-population. Finally, the management and monitoring of the bontebok meta-population should be guided by this BMP-S and all agencies, private and corporate landowners, should strive to promote the conservation of the bontebok. Only a collaborative and focused science-based effort, supported by sound management principles and best practice will ensure the success and future survival of the species.

### 2.5.2 Non-detriment Finding

The Scientific Authority of South Africa, as established in terms of Section 60(1) of the NEM: BA, published a Non-Detriment Finding (NDF) Assessment for public input on 10 September 2015 (Gazette vol. 603, no. 39185). A NDF is a science-based risk assessment measuring a species' vulnerability to trade against its management system to ensure that any offtake will not be detrimental to the long term survival of the species and that the species is maintained throughout its range at a level consistent with its role in the ecosystem and well above the level at which the species might become eligible for inclusion in CITES Appendix I.

The non-detriment finding undertaken for bontebok demonstrated that legal local and international trade in live animals and the export of hunting trophies at present poses a moderate risk to the survival of this subspecies in South Africa, which can neither be deemed detrimental nor non-detrimental. This moderate risk however is mostly due to a lack of management and monitoring of bontebok off-takes. The NDF recommended the development and effective implementation of a Biodiversity Management Plan (BMP) in terms of section 43 of the NEMBA to improve both management and monitoring. It is further recommended by the NDF that the BMP includes a meta-population management plan and addresses the following:

1. The long term monitoring of harvest in the form of translocation and trophy hunting,
2. Guidelines for the management and regulation of harvest,
3. Incentives to increase habitat conservation benefits from the harvest of bontebok, especially within the natural and extended natural distribution range.



## **2.6 Conservation status and legislative context**

In South Africa, legislative jurisdiction regarding the conservation and management of wildlife is shared between the national and provincial governments. The Constitution mandates that “nature conservation, excluding national parks, national botanical gardens and marine resources,” is one of the functional areas in which there is concurrent national and provincial legislative jurisdiction.

South Africa has nine provinces: Eastern Cape, Free State, Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, North West, and Western Cape. A great deal of legislative and executive jurisdiction over issues of conservation and management of wildlife, including regulation of imports and exports, is exercised by these provincial governments. National government wields significant legislative jurisdiction over the protection of wildlife, in large part to create national uniformity on the matter.

The NEM: BA and its subsidiary legislation put in place protections for various species that are threatened or otherwise in need of protection. It also provides the authority for consolidating fragmented biodiversity legislation in the country through the establishment of national norms and standards specific to certain particularly vulnerable animals. Enforcement of the NEM: BA and its subsidiary legislation is shared across various tiers of government (Goitom 2013).

### **2.6.1 International obligations**

#### **Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD)**

South Africa is a Party to the CBD. Parties to the CBD adopted the Strategic Plan for Biodiversity 2011-2020, in 2010 in Nagoya, Japan, with the purpose of inspiring broad-based action in support of biodiversity over the following decade by all countries and stakeholders. In recognition for the urgent need for action the United Nations General Assembly also declared 2011-2020 as the United Nations Decade on Biodiversity. The Strategic Plan comprises a shared vision, a mission, strategic goals and 20 targets and serves as a framework for the establishment of national and regional targets, promoting the three objectives of the CBD.

The development and implementation of this BMP-S addresses Strategic Goal C: Improve the status of biodiversity by safeguarding ecosystems, species and genetic diversity. This BMP-S specifically aims to contribute to the Target 12: By 2020 the extinction of known threatened species has been prevented and their conservation status, particularly to those in decline, has been improved and sustained. This target specifically related to IUCN listed threatened species and has two components:

Preventing extinction. Preventing extinction entails that those species which are currently threatened do not move into the extinct category; and

Improving the conservation status of threatened species. An improvement in conservation status would entail a species increasing in population to a point where it moves to a lower threat status.

Progress towards this target would help reach other targets contained in the Strategic Plan, including Target 13. Further actions taken towards this target could also help to implement commitments related to the species focussed multilateral agreements such as CITES (2012).

#### **World Heritage Convention**

A number of bontebok occur on the Robben Island World Heritage Site and the Cape Floral Region Protected Areas World Heritage Site which includes all formally protected areas where bontebok occur except for the West Coast National Park.

#### **Convention on international Trade of Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES)**

The Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES) aims to ensure that international trade in CITES listed species is sustainable and not detrimental to the survival of the species in the wild. South Africa ratified to CITES in 1975 and is one of the 183 current signatories to the Convention. CITES works by subjecting international trade in specimens of selected species to certain controls. All import, export, re-export and introduction from the sea of species covered by the Convention has to be authorized through a licensing system. Each Party to the Convention must designate one or more

Management Authorities in charge of administering that licensing system and one or more Scientific Authorities to advise them on the effects of trade on the status of the species.

The Conference of the Parties (CoP), which is the supreme decision-making body of the Convention and comprises all its Parties, has agreed in Resolution Conf. 9.24 (Rev. CoP17) on a set of biological and trade criteria to help determine whether a species should be included in Appendices I or II. At each regular meeting of the CoP, Parties submit proposals based on those criteria to amend these two Appendices. Those amendment proposals are discussed and then submitted to a vote. The Convention also allows for amendments by a postal procedure between meetings of the CoP (Article XV, paragraph 2, of the Convention), but this procedure is rarely used. CITES listed species are categorized in three Appendices (Appendix I, II and III) according to the extent to which they are threatened. Bontebok is currently listed in Appendix II as explained below.

### **Appendix II**

Appendix II includes species not necessarily threatened with extinction, but in which trade must be controlled in order to avoid utilization incompatible with their survival. An export permit or re-export certificate issued by the Management Authority of the State of export or re-export is required. An export permit may be issued only if the specimen was legally obtained and if the export will not be detrimental to the survival of the species. A re-export certificate may be issued only if the specimen was imported in accordance with the Convention. In the case of a live animal or plant, it must be prepared and shipped to minimize any risk of injury, damage to health or cruel treatment. No import permit is needed unless required by national law. In the case of specimens introduced from the sea, a certificate has to be issued by the Management Authority of the State into which the specimens are being brought, for species listed in Appendix I or II.

### **International Union of Conservation of Nature (IUCN)**

Established in 1964, the International Union for Conservation of Nature's Red List of Threatened Species has evolved to become the world's most comprehensive information source on the global conservation status of animal, fungi and plant species. The IUCN Red List is a critical indicator of the health of the world's biodiversity. Far more than a list of species and their status, it is a powerful tool to inform and catalyze action for biodiversity conservation and policy change, critical to protecting the natural resources we need to survive. It provides information about range, population size, habitat and ecology, use and/or trade, threats, and conservation actions that will help inform necessary conservation decisions.

According to Radloff *et al*, the IUCN Red List status for bontebok was changed to "Vulnerable" (VU B2ab (ii) +D1) as conservation action has seen the numbers of this subspecies increase within the NDR and ENDR within the Western Cape. The IUCN Red List is set upon precise criteria to evaluate the extinction risk of thousands of species and subspecies. These criteria are relevant to all species and all regions of the world. The summary of the IUCN Criteria used for the species assessment is attached to this BMP as Appendix F for ease of reference.

## **2.6.2 National legislation**

### **National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004 (NEM: BA)**

The NEM: BA gives effect to the constitutional commitment to take reasonable legislative measures that promote conservation by providing for the management and conservation of biological diversity and the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources.

Section 60 (1) of NEMBA makes provision for the establishment of the Scientific Authority for the purpose of assisting in regulating and restricting the trade in specimens of listed threatened or protected species, and CITES-listed species. The functions of the Scientific Authority include making non-detriment findings on the impact of actions relating to the international trade in specimens of listed threatened or protected species. "Non-detriment findings" means the determination of the non-detrimental impact of an action on the survival of a species.

### **National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 57 of 2003 (NEM: PAA)**

NEM: PAA provides for the protection and conservation of ecologically viable areas representative of South Africa's biodiversity and natural landscapes and seascapes in protected areas. Protected areas in South Africa

offer a viable tool for habitat protection and the protection and maintenance of ecologically viable numbers of the bontebok and their associated species and habitats.

### **Threatened or Protected Species Regulations, 2007 (ToPS)**

The Threatened or Protected Species (ToPS) Regulations promulgated in terms of NEM: BA came into force in February 2008. The regulations provide for the protection of species that are threatened or in need of protection to ensure their survival in the wild and give effect to the Republic's obligations. Bontebok are currently listed as "Protected". At the time of writing (October 2016). The ToPS Regulations, 2007, are going through a comprehensive process of review and amendment

### **Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora Regulations, 2010 (CITES Regulations)**

On 05 March 2010, the Minister of Environmental Affairs published CITES Regulations, 2010 in the *Government Gazette* No. 33002, for implementation. These regulations were published in terms of section 97 of the NEMBA, and give effect to the Republic of South Africa's obligations in terms of a ratified international agreement as far as it relates to international trade in endangered species.

Regulation 6(3)(c) of the CITES Regulations, 2010 states that an export permit may only be granted if the following condition (amongst others) is met:

*"(c) In the case of a specimen of a species listed in Appendix I or II, the Scientific Authority has made a non-detriment finding and advised the Management Authority accordingly".*

### **2.6.3 Other relevant South African legislation**

Apart from the National Environmental Management Act, 107 of 1998 (NEMA) and its related Acts and Regulations, the nine provincial conservation ordinances / acts are the major regulatory instruments for the regulation of wild animal species in South Africa.

Transvaal Nature Conservation Ordinance, 12 of 1983 (implemented in Gauteng; Limpopo; North West and Mpumalanga Provinces) and augmented by:

- Gauteng Nature Conservation Ordinance, 1983 – Gauteng Nature Conservation Act, 2014;
- Limpopo Nature Conservation Ordinance, 1983 – Limpopo Environmental Management Act, 2003; Gazankulu Nature Conservation Act, 5 of 1975, Venda Nature Conservation Act, 10 of 1973;
- Mpumalanga Ordinance, 1983 - Mpumalanga Nature Conservation Act, 10 of 1998;
- North West Nature Conservation Ordinance, 1983; Bophuthatswana Nature Conservation Act, 1973; Lebowa Nature Conservation Act, 1973, and tribal rule.

Cape Province Nature Conservation Ordinance, 19 of 1974 (implemented in the Western Cape; Eastern Cape including Ciskei and Transkei; Northern Cape and North West Provinces) and augmented by:

- Western Cape Nature Conservation Ordinance, 19 of 1974 – Western Cape Biodiversity Bill *in prep.*
- Northern Cape Nature Conservation Act, 9 of 2009.
- Eastern Cape Nature Conservation Ordinance, 19 of 1974; Ciskei Nature Conservation Act, 10 of 1987; Transkei Decree, 9 of 1992.

Natal Nature Conservation Ordinance, 15 of 1974 (implemented in KwaZulu-Natal Province, including KwaZulu)

- KwaZulu Nature Conservation Act, 29 of 1992 – KwaZulu-Natal Nature Conservation Management Act, 9 of 1997; KwaZulu Nature Conservation Act, 8 of 1975.

Free State Nature Conservation Ordinance, 1969 (implemented in the Free State Province, including QwaQwa) and augmented by:

- Free State Nature Conservation Ordinance, 8 of 1969; QwaQwa Nature Conservation 5 of 1976.

Supporting decision making instruments include National Norms and Standards and Provincial Conservation and Regulatory Policies.



Other Acts such as the Animals Protection Act, 71 of 1962 as amended, which regulates animal welfare in South Africa is also applicable to wildlife.

The Game Theft Act, 105 of 1991; the Fencing Act, 31 of 1963; the Animal Health Act, 7 of 2002; Animals Diseases Act, 35 of 1984; Medicines and Related Substances Control Act, 101 of 1965; and the Animal Matters Amendment Act, 42 of 1993, may also be relevant to bontebok conservation as it plays a significant role in veterinary care of animals, as well as their translocation.

### 3) PLANNING FRAMEWORK

#### 3.1 The planning context

The South African National Parks and CapeNature initiated the development of this BMP-S for bontebok and co-hosted a workshop whereby a panel of experts and stakeholders jointly drew up the key aspects of this BMP-S. A Background Document consisting of all current information on bontebok was distributed and discussed at the workshop. Workshop participants developed a desired state for bontebok and also identified and prioritised the key threats to bontebok. In order to mitigate or prevent these threats they formulated a set of objectives following guidelines depicted in Figure 3.1. These objectives are written in such a way, that an explicit outcome is stated and it is clear that action is needed to achieve this outcome. Actions are monitored and evaluated and feedback provided in order for strategic adaptive management to be adopted within this BMP.

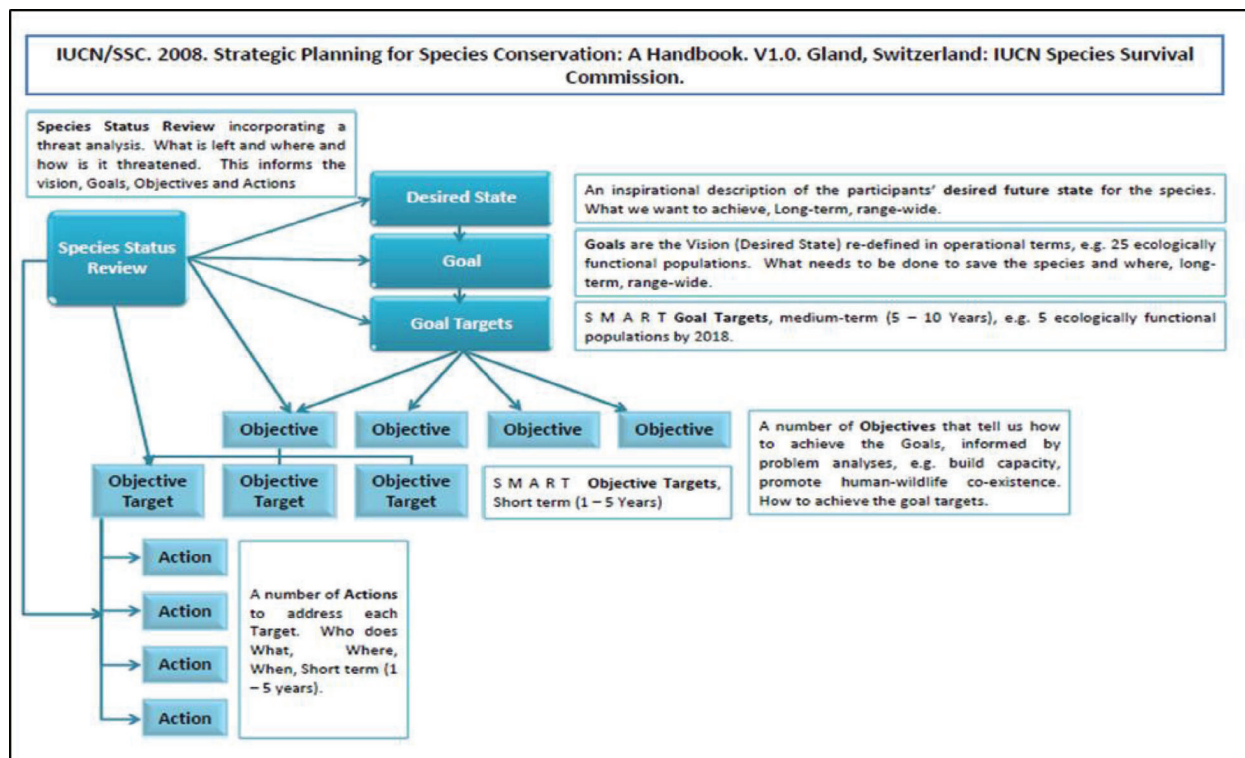
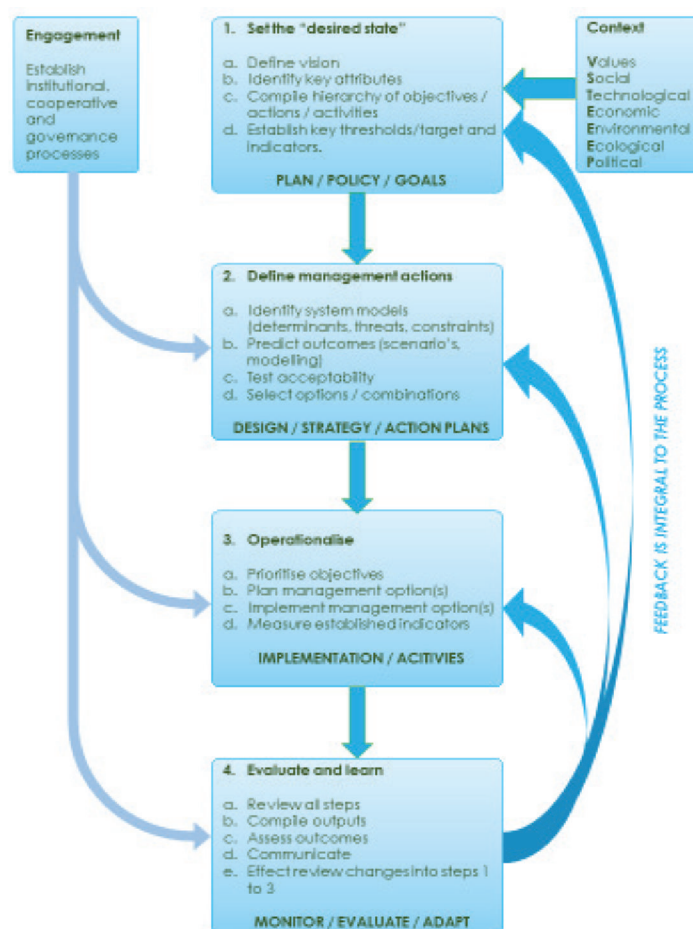


Figure 3.1: IUCN Species Survival Commission schematic for species conservation planning.



**Figure 3.2:** Strategic Adaptive Management Framework adapted from Kingsford, R.T., Biggs, H.C. and Pollard, S.R. 2010, and Strategic Adaptive Management in freshwater protected areas and their rivers. *Biological Conservation* 144, 1194-1203. doi:10.1016/j.biocon.2010.09.022.

### 3.2 Key role players

Key role players and stakeholders in the management of bontebok are the following (Table 3.2).

- Government departments and agencies (at a national, provincial and local level) that are mandated, in terms of legislation, to protect this species and to implement the actions identified in this plan in order to ensure the survival of this species in the wild.
- Other government departments involved in regulating activities that may positively / negatively impact the species.
- Private land owners with herds of bontebok on their land either for conservation or game ranching.
- Tertiary institutions involved with research relevant to the species.
- Non-governmental organisations, at both a national and international level, providing funding for research, students and projects.
- The tourism industry particularly eco-tourism operators.

**Table 3.2** Organisations that are involved in developing and implementing various aspects of the bontebok BMP-S.

National Government	Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
---------------------	---

	Department of Environmental Affairs (Biodiversity and Conservation, Legal, etc.) South African National Biodiversity Institute South African National Parks National Zoological Gardens of South Africa
Provincial Government	CapeNature Northern Cape Province: Department of Environment and Nature Conservation Eastern Cape Province: Department of Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism Free State Province: Department Economic, Small Business Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs Limpopo Province: Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife Gauteng Province: Department of Agriculture and Rural Development Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency
Academic Institutions	University of the Free State University of Cape Town: Animal Demography Unit University of Western Cape Stellenbosch University
Non-Government Organisations	WWF WRSa PHASA SAHGCA
Other	

### 3.3 Stakeholder engagement

An email invitation was sent on the 21 October 2013 to a list of people known to be experts in matters relating to bontebok antelope and known representatives of organisations managing bontebok, requesting their participation in a Workshop to draft a BMP-S. They were asked to recommend additional stakeholders that they thought could contribute to the compilation of the Biodiversity Management Plan.

The Stakeholder Workshop was held on 28 November 2013 (Appendix 1). The workshop included presentations on the current state of knowledge for bontebok. The group as a collective developed the Desired State and identified the key threats to long term survival of bontebok. Break-away groups led by an expert in that particular field, then developed Objectives and Action Plans for each threat. The proceedings of the Workshop were used to compile the draft Biodiversity Management Plan for bontebok. This draft was compiled by representatives of SANParks and CapeNature.

The draft Biodiversity Management Plan that contained the threats and actions were sent to the stakeholders for comments and contributions. These were then incorporated into the document, with all the supporting background information. The draft Bontebok Biodiversity Management Plan will be submitted to the Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) who will take it through the formal approval process.

### 3.4 Relevant agreements

There is currently no formal inter-agency agreement as far as the management of bontebok is concerned. Apart from the three stakeholder and internal workshops held, a meeting held between the Eastern Cape Parks

and Tourism Agency, SANParks and CapeNature in January 2016 in Stellenbosch will form the basis of future inter-agency cooperative agreements, formal Memoranda of Understanding (MOU) and/or protocols to be developed.

### **3.5 Identification of lead and implementing agencies**

A final BMP-S workshop with conservation agencies and other stakeholders was held on 22 November 2016 (Agenda and Attendance Registers are attached as Appendix D). During this workshop all stakeholders for the BMP-s were identified and confirmed, and the relationships between stakeholders were workshoped by small working groups as an introduction to the rest of the proceedings. The outputs of this (Venn diagrams representing different stakeholders and their respective relationships) are attached as Appendix E. This exercise informed further discussion and final agreement on who the respective lead and responsible agencies are, as well as the collaborators. Both the Western Cape Department of Local Government, Environmental Affairs and Development Planning (DEADP) through CapeNature as a suitable organ of state responsible for the implementation of the plan in the Western Cape and the Eastern Cape Department of Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism (DEDEAT) as a suitable organ of state responsible for the implementation of the plan, in the Eastern Cape accepted the responsibility to implement the Bontebok BMP-S within their jurisdiction. The workshop further identified additional lead and implementing agencies, and collaborators for the respective actions under each Objective Target. The workshop and all stakeholders present concluded and reached consensus on all identified actions under each objective target.

It should be noted that the NC DENC could not attend the workshop but provided extensive comments on the document. Similarly, the EC DEDEAT and FS DESTEA could not attend either, but have also supplied comments on earlier versions of the BMP-S.

### **3.6 Expert Verification of Quality of Content and Context**

The stakeholders who were involved in the compilation of this Biodiversity Management Plan include the leading experts on this species and related issues. They have provided input and commented on this plan throughout the compilation process.

#### 4) BIODIVERSITY MANAGEMENT PLAN

##### 4.1 Lead and implementing agencies

Lead agencies:	Western Cape Department of Local Government, Environmental Affairs and Development Planning (DEADP) through CapeNature by delegation of powers & DEDEAT for Eastern Cape	
Implementing Agencies:	DEA:	Regulation, coordination of implementation, monitoring, evaluation and annual reporting.
	CapeNature:	Regulation, research collaboration, population management, monitoring and reporting.
	SANParks:	Population management, monitoring, research collaboration and reporting.
	ECPTA:	Population management, monitoring, research collaboration and reporting.
	EC DEDEAT:	Regulation, monitoring and reporting.
	NC DENC:	Regulation, population management, monitoring, research collaboration and reporting.
	FS DESTEA:	Population management, monitoring, research collaboration and reporting.
	NZG:	Research, monitoring and reporting.
	SANBI:	Monitoring, reporting and research facilitation.

#### 4.2 Identified threats and challenges

##### 4.2.1 THREAT: Habitat alteration and fragmentation

Fragmented populations, primarily on sub-optimal habitat (within NDR and ENDR), are currently managed as sources for distribution of bontebok to properties outside the natural range for commercial gain, while comparatively little effort is being afforded towards habitat rehabilitation and restoration to secure the future of bontebok within its NDR. While some subpopulations have exhibited positive growth rates, offtakes and translocations from within the natural range has suppressed overall population growth. Similarly, the lack of available habitat within the natural range has inhibited population expansion and an increase in area of occupancy.

##### 4.2.2 THREAT: Inbreeding

In the 1930's the 17 bontebok that survived loss of habitat due to agriculture, livestock farming and overhunting were introduced into the original Bontebok National Park. This population increased and in 1960, 61 animals were successfully translocated to the then newly establish Bontebok National Park (Barnard and van der Walt 1961). According to van Wyk *et al.* (2013) the restricted number of original breeding animals (17), in combination with the population's isolation may have contributed to low levels of genetic diversity.

Measures of genetic diversity in the reference bontebok were found to be lower than that of reference blesbok populations. The lower level of molecular diversity observed within the reference bontebok is however expected given its demographic history. The bontebok does not have the buffering effect of a large genetic reservoir and inbreeding may thus be detrimental to the bontebok population (Van Wyk *et al.* 2013). Slow recovery and growth of the bontebok populations may be attributed to environmental factors, unstable sex ratios and/or low reproductive success. In the long-term, low genetic variation in combination with population isolation may result in an increase in the risk of extinction (Van Wyk *et al.* 2013).

##### 4.2.3 THREAT: Hybridisation

Hybridisation between the bontebok and blesbok is of specific concern to the conservation of bontebok (Van Wyk *et al.* 2013). Hybridisation between the two subspecies has occurred due to human-mediated mixing. Blesbok occur widely throughout South Africa outside of the Western Cape. There is a concern that private landowners may be translocating bontebok to properties where hybrids are already present or to properties that neighbour blesbok populations. However, what is not known is the full extent to which hybridisation has



occurred. Negative consequences associated with hybridisation include reduction of fitness, alteration in the genetic structure of populations and the interference of locally co-adapted gene complexes (Allendorf et al. 2001). Van Wyk *et al* (2013) have called for research on bontebok and blesbok hybridisation to be expanded to include all regions in South Africa where potentially bontebok populations may be under threat.

#### **4.2.4 THREAT: Unregulated hunting and trade**

A more recent threat is the increased pressure of hunting and harvest regimes for bontebok which could negatively impact this species by off-takes in areas outside of the NDR and thus a loss to conservation if conservation principles (non-selective breeding, hybridisation) are not applied. Given the limited genetic diversity of bontebok a well-managed harvest regime needs to be implemented to prevent the loss of genetic diversity *via* biased selection pressures (for coat colour, pattern and horn sizes). The killing of individuals with higher levels of genetic diversity can also exacerbate the negative effects of inbreeding.

#### **4.2.5 CHALLENGE: Implementation of effective Meta-population management**

A meta-population plan is required to sustain bontebok genetic purity and diversity. Within the natural range, there are many properties containing small subpopulations which cannot increase in size because they are limited by space. There is also a space limitation due to land use for extensive crop production. Thus, although there is still scope for the core population to increase, protected areas and private conservation areas must significantly expand to create larger areas of natural habitat for the population and these should be connected to a wider meta-population that includes the extended natural range to become a resilient population. Bontebok are currently exported out of the Western Cape to areas outside of their NDR where they are hunted and then no longer contribute to the meta-population management needs to address this sink effect and ensure bontebok from outside the NDR contribute to the survival of this species.

#### **4.2.6 CHALLENGE: To provide incentives for private land owners to maintain viable sub-populations of bontebok in its natural distribution range**

Hunting, trading and stock accessibility, have been identified as potential bontebok derived incentives. Conservation accreditation schemes, meta-population participation and the provision of conservation management guidelines and support have also been identified as potential incentives, whereas strict policy and legislative requirements have been noted as disincentives. The opportunity exists for fragmented natural areas to be linked *via* corridors to larger natural areas and conserve more of the threatened Renosterveld vegetation. Although the population size of bontebok has increased, it has remained relatively low compared with other ruminant species (Broders et al. 1999). By increasing the status and value of bontebok through land restoration subsidies, private land owners may be willing to stock bontebok on their farms in the NDR. Intangible incentives, such as recognition and identification of bontebok conservation champions can help build trust between conservation agencies and private land owners through active relationship management.

#### **4.2.7 CHALLENGE: To consistently and uniformly implement legislation, policies and IUCN guidelines**

Provinces have differing conservation legislations, policies, priorities and objectives and are funded *via* provincial treasuries aligned with the provincial priorities, resulting in variation in the allocation of capacity and resources for nature conservation. Collectively, the provinces have incorporated approximately 22 sets of nature conservation legislation, including decrees and tribal rules effected in previous homeland states. The concurrent competence issue (environment and nature conservation) between the national and provincial departments creates confusion for the public and potentially obscures specific mandates. The NEM: BA and its subsidiary legislation is implemented by the DEA as well as provinces and incorporates various mandatory obligations in terms of international conventions and agreements. The magnitude of legislation, processes and mandates may appear poorly aligned and inconsistently implemented, resulting in over or under regulation of specific activities towards different objectives ((PMG). 2014; Birss 2014; Goitom 2013). If not corrected this could have a negative effect on bontebok conservation.

#### **4.2.8 CHALLENGE: To communicate and collaborate effectively among stakeholders**

An increase in the number of sub-populations of bontebok on private land, an increased interest in utilisation of the species and the increased interest by NGO governing bodies within the wildlife industry, resulted in



increased challenges for reconciling the objectives of conservation agencies with the objectives of wildlife ranchers, hunters, animal activists, animal welfare organisations and academia.

**4.2.9 CHALLENGE: To overcome management and capacity constraints**

Conservation management agencies are constrained by limited and decreasing funding for the implementation of conservation action plans, compliance and enforcement. Inadequate or inappropriate equipment, capacity and expertise within the formal conservation agency sector as well as in the private ranching sector encumbers effective management of some sub-populations. The deficiency of site-level management plans and an overall management strategy further disables effective and efficient meta-population-oriented management of bontebok sub-populations.

**4.2.10 CHALLENGE: To create awareness regarding low genetic variation and hybridisation**

A key management challenge is the low genetic variation within the NDR population which could potentially lead to a genetic bottleneck. The risk of hybridisation when blesbok are introduced into the bontebok NDR and ENDR populations due to the relaxation of laws prohibiting blesbok in the Western Cape and the introduction of bontebok to other provinces in South Africa, is a major threat to the genetic integrity of bontebok. Hybridisation between the bontebok and blesbok is of specific concern to the conservation of bontebok (Van Wyk et al. 2013). Hybridisation between the two has occurred due to human-mediated mixing of the separate subspecies. However, what is not known is the full extent to which hybridisation occurs. Negative consequences associated with hybridisation include reduced fitness, alteration in the genetic structure of populations and the interference of locally co-adapted gene complexes (Allendorf et al. 2001). Anthropogenic hybridisation may occur due to fostered changes in the abundance and distribution of the species, the removal of some barriers that will cause isolated or restricted populations to expand, or by the uncontrolled diffusion with domestic species.

**4.2.11 CHALLENGE: To integrate conservation planning**

Although there has been numerous studies on bontebok the research has been found to be outdated and new research is required. The existing network of protected areas, protected area expansion strategies and the establishment of connectivity corridors, do not adequately incorporate bontebok meta-population conservation objectives. The long term conservation of bontebok requires connectivity of suitable habitat, access to water and optimal forage across landscapes which needs to be incorporated into integrated conservation plans (in other words, identifying spatially explicit priorities and actions for the conservation of bontebok). Anthropogenic relocation to other areas to mimic connectivity would undermine the value of bontebok as a flagship species for renosterveld conservation.

## 5) ACTION PLAN AND MONITORING FRAMEWORK

The bontebok BMP-S planning process is aligned to the framework provided by the IUCN SSC for species conservation planning. It has guided the stakeholder engagement and planning workshops in defining the objectives and actions for this BMP-S. The various workshop outputs have guided the compilation of the Action Plan and Monitoring Framework to enable effective reporting as shown in Figure 5.

**Figure 5:** Action Plan and Monitoring Framework derived from IUCN Species Survival Commission schematic for species conservation planning methodology applied for this BMP-S.

### 5.1 OBJECTIVE 1: TO CONSERVE THE GENETIC INTEGRITY AND DIVERSITY OF BONTEBOK

#### Objective Target 1.1 Conserve genetically diverse meta-population

5.1.1.1 ACTION: DEVELOP A SOUND META-POPULATION MANAGEMENT GUIDELINE.		
Lead agencies:	CN	
Collaborators:	SANBI: NZG, DEA, SANPARKS, SANBI, DAFF, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, NC DENC, WRSA, SAHGCA, WPA, Private sector, Higher Education Institutions	
Essential activities:	1) Compile bontebok meta-population management guidelines with clear objectives and principles for contributing sub-populations, including criteria for identifying source, sink and reinforcement sub-populations and meta-population management methodology 2) Evaluate the status of all sub-populations and make recommendations for the management and contribution toward the objectives of the bontebok meta-population. 3) Implement meta-population management 4) Include guidelines into site specific management plans for implementation.	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Meta-population management implemented – increased genetic resilience/diversity	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Population demographics & genetics	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Within two years of BMP being gazetted	Meta-population management guideline; Assessment of sub-populations
Challenges: CapeNature capacity constraints		

5.1.1.2 ACTION: INVESTIGATE THE GENETIC DIVERSITY OF THE BONTEBOK AND DEVELOP MODELS AND NATIONAL PROTOCOLS TO MAINTAIN GENETIC DIVERSITY AND INTEGRITY IN BONTEBOK		
Lead agencies:	CN	
Implementing agencies:	SANParks, DEA, NZG, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD, DAFF	
Collaborators:	UFS, UWC, Cardiff University, Tennessee University, WRSA, SAHGCA, Private sector, SUN, UCT	
Essential activities:	1) Develop national protocol for genetic sampling, forensic process and testing	

	2) Collect samples (currently opportunistic during translocations only)	
	3) Develop genetic management model in collaboration with SANBI and UCT SWK	
	4) Analyse data from maximum number of sub-populations	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Standardised genetic testing. 2) Genetic diversity of subpopulations known to inform adaptive management of meta-population strategy implementation.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	2) Increased sampling efficiency and efficacy; 3) Reduced risks associated with invasive sampling techniques; 4) Reliable, repeatable genetic test results achieved; 5) Decreased risk of loss of allelic diversity; 6) Improved sub-population performance.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Immediate	Genetic sampling protocol standardised and implemented consistently in South Africa; Centralised depository
Challenges:		

#### Objective Target 1.2 Safeguard bontebok against hybridisation

<b>5.1.2.1 ACTION: MANAGE THE RISK OF HYBRIDISATION OF BONTEBOK WITH BLESBOK.</b>		
<b>Lead agencies:</b>	SANParks, CN	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD	
<b>Collaborators:</b>	WRSA, SAHGCA, Private sector	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Develop and maintain a national distribution register of hybridisation events between bontebok and blesbok 2) Assess, quantify and prioritise bontebok sub-populations in the natural distribution range at risk of hybridisation 3) Co-develop with private landowners an exit policy for the removal of blesbok / hybrids within the NDR.	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Decrease instances of hybridisation	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Regular genetic testing and reporting of any hybrids and actions taken to control these. 2) Decrease in numbers of blesbok and hybrids in NDR in Western Cape based on game database information.	
<b>Funding / Resources</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>	<b>Measurable Indicators / Outputs</b>
Agency operational budget	Immediate	Hybrid detection and hybrid risk assessment protocols
4) Challenges: Landowner compliance: Ensuring that blesbok and hybrids are prevented from interacting with bontebok meta-population by ensuring that they are adequately enclosed or euthanized.		

<b>5.1.2.2 ACTION: DEVELOP A LIST OF PRIORITY SITES FOR REINFORCEMENT AND REINTRODUCTION.</b>		
<b>Lead agencies:</b>	CN	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	SANParks	

<b>Collaborators:</b>	SANBI	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Develop assessment guidelines for potential reinforcement and reintroduction sites 2) Develop prioritisation guideline for potential bontebok reinforcement and reintroduction sites 3) Develop prioritised list of sites and Conduct site assessments.	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Increased distribution of viable bontebok sub-populations in NDR	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Site assessment reports, monitoring of populations and veld condition & carrying capacity	
<b>Funding / Resources</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>	<b>Measurable Indicators / Outputs</b>
Agency operational budget	Within two years of BMP being gazetted	Priority sites identified; Site assessment, translocation and prioritisation guideline
Challenges: Data accuracy – non verified vegetation data		

**Objective Target 1.3 Implement a meta-population management framework**

<b>5.1.3.2 ACTION: MAINTAIN A CENTRALISED NATIONAL BONTEBOK GENETICS DATABASE.</b>		
<b>Lead agencies:</b>	NZG,	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	DEA, SANBI: NZG, SANParks, CN, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD	
<b>Collaborators:</b>	SANBI, WRSA, WPA, SAHGCA, Private sector	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Collate and update bontebok DNA profiles in centralised database.	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) National centralised database established and linked to distribution database	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Established national database which is updated ad hoc and reported on annually.	
<b>Funding / Resources</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>	<b>Measurable Indicators / Outputs</b>
Agency operational budget	Immediate	Bontebok DNA profiles
Challenges:		
<b>5.1.3.1 ACTION: MAINTAIN A CENTRALISED NATIONAL BONTEBOK POPULATION DATABASE.</b>		
<b>Lead agencies:</b>	SANBI, CN, SANParks	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD	
<b>Collaborators:</b>	WRSA, SAHGCA, Private sector	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Collate and update bontebok distribution, population source, population dynamics, introductions and off-take data annually.	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) National centralised distribution database established	

<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Established national database which is updated ad hoc and reported on annually.	
<b>Funding / Resources</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>	<b>Measurable Indicators / Outputs</b>
Agency operational budget	Immediate	Spatial bontebok distribution databases
Challenges: Access to information, NC DENC has capacity challenges		

**Objective Target 1.4 Long term monitoring of bontebok sub-populations**

<b>5.1.4.1 ACTION: IMPLEMENT STANDARDISED BONTEBOK SURVEY AND MONITORING PROTOCOLS FOR PROTECTED AREAS TO INFORM ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT.</b>		
<b>Lead agencies:</b>	CN, SANParks	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	SANParks, CN, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, NC DENC	
<b>Collaborators:</b>	SANBI, WRSA, SAHGCA, Private sector	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Develop standardised data collection and population monitoring protocols for bontebok sub-populations on protected areas 2) Develop standardised population monitoring protocols for bontebok sub-populations on private land 3) Conduct regular standardised sub-population assessments according to guidelines, (precision based, game census)	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Accurate population trend data informing strategic adaptive management.	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Annual trend data obtained from surveys and monitoring	
<b>Funding / Resources</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>	<b>Measurable Indicators / Outputs</b>
Agency operational budget / Additional funding for aerial census required.	Immediate	Precise game censuses, standardised monitoring protocols
Challenges: Accurate population trend data, capacity and resources. Sourcing and securing funding for implementation of census techniques (aerial).		

<b>5.1.4.2 ACTION: COORDINATE ANNUAL BONTEBOK SUB-POPULATION STATUS REPORTS.</b>		
<b>Lead agencies:</b>	SANBI,	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	CN, SANParks, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD	
<b>Collaborators:</b>		
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Develop and implement standardised annual reporting formats for bontebok sub-populations 2) Collate sub-population status reports and analyse overall meta-population performance	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Quality bontebok sub-population data	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Annual Population status reports available	
<b>Funding / Resources</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>	<b>Measurable Indicators / Outputs</b>

Agency operational budget	Immediate	Standardised annual reporting and status reports
Challenges: Flow and availability of data for collating report		

5.1.4.3 ACTION: MONITOR POPULATION PERFORMANCE AND HABITAT CONDITION FOR BONTEBOK ON PRIVATE LAND.		
<b>Lead agencies:</b>	CN	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	SANParks, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD	
<b>Collaborators:</b>	SANBI, WPA, SAHGCA, Private Sector	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Identify viable populations contributing to conservation of bontebok. 2) Regulatory agencies to develop and implement standardised habitat and population assessments for bontebok on private land 3) Conduct assessment of habitat quality, habitat area availability and intra-specific competition for bontebok sub-populations on private land	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Viable populations established and maintained	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Population monitoring report produced every five years	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget/Contributions from Private Sector	Within three years of the BMP-s being gazetted	Standardised habitat and population assessments for introductions
Challenges: Capacity for conducting assessments. Resources for data collation and follow-up inspection results and report production must be sourced.		

**5.2 OBJECTIVE 2: TO PREVENT FURTHER HABITAT LOSS AND HABITAT DEGRADATION, AND ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN HISTORIC HABITAT CONNECTIVITY**

**Objective Target 2.1 Restore habitat and connectivity**

**5.2.1.1 ACTION: IMPLEMENT HABITAT EXPANSION THROUGH STEWARDSHIP, CUSTODIANSHIP AND CONNECTIVITY CORRIDORS IN THE NATURAL DISTRIBUTION RANGE OF BONTEBOK.**

<b>Lead agencies:</b>	CN, SANParks	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	DAFF, conservation agencies	
<b>Collaborators:</b>	DEA&DP, local municipalities Stewardship agencies, , private landowners, WWF/BirdLife SA ,NGOs	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Identify priority bontebok habitat sites at provincial and national level to inform expansion and custodianship initiatives 2) Integrate bontebok habitat requirements into conservation planning processes 3) Prioritise and implement bontebok stewardship and custodianship agreements at priority sites 4) Acquire suitable land for bontebok habitat expansion	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Increased distribution of bontebok in the natural distribution range	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Priority habitat map 2) PA expansion	
<b>Funding / Resources</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>	<b>Measurable Indicators / Outputs</b>
Agency operational budget. Funding sourced for land acquisition.	Immediate	Fine-scale habitat map of possible stewardship/custodian sites Prioritised expansion/custodian sites Habitat suitability matrix
Challenges: Funding to purchase available land, scarcity of suitable land, landowner willingness. Stewardship selection criteria focused on vegetation, should include priority fauna		

#### 5.2.1.2 ACTION: DEVELOP GUIDELINES AND IMPLEMENT HABITAT REHABILITATION IN THE NATURAL DISTRIBUTION RANGE OF BONTEBOK

<b>Lead agencies:</b>	CN	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	SANParks, DAFF, DEA&DP, local municipalities	
<b>Collaborators:</b>	Stewardship agencies, Higher Education Institutions, DEA-NRM, SANBI	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Implement Alien Vegetation Management on priority habitats for bontebok in the natural distribution range 2) Develop guidelines for private landowners for habitat restoration for bontebok 3) Engage with key partners (BGCMA, FPAs, EPWP) for implementation	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Increased availability of viable habitat 2) Bontebok recognised as flagship species for renosterveld conservation 3) Decreased density of alien vegetation	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Rehabilitation guidelines developed, Alien Vegetation Management projects implemented	
<b>Funding / Resources</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>	<b>Measurable Indicators / Outputs</b>
Agency operational budget and sourcing of funding from NGOs	Within two years of gazetting	Rehabilitation guidelines. AVM hectares cleared
Challenges: Cost of rehabilitation programmes, rezoning of land for conservation, landowner willingness		



**5.3 OBJECTIVE 3: TO ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN EFFECTIVE COMMUNICATION AND AWARENESS BETWEEN AND AMONG STAKEHOLDERS**

**Objective Target 3.1 Establish and maintain partnerships for bontebok conservation**

<b>5.3.1.1 ACTION: FORMALISE INTER-AGENCY COLLABORATION TO COORDINATE AND REVIEW THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE BONTEBOK BMP-S.</b>		
<b>Lead agencies:</b>	CN	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	SANPARKS, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD, DEA	
<b>Collaborators:</b>		
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Establish a Steering Committee for the implementation and review of the bontebok BMP-S 2) Develop Steering Committee terms of reference and reporting framework, ToR to address DEA involvement. 3) Develop and implement an inter-agency capacity development and exchange strategy 4) Draft an inter-agency MOU for the exchange, and or donation of bontebok to attain the objectives of the bontebok BMP-S. 5) National communication with all role players (to improve collaboration and coordination between stakeholders)	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Established and formalised Steering Committee. 2) Improved inter-agency collaboration and coordination.	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Minutes of Steering Committee meetings.	
<b>Funding / Resources</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>	<b>Measurable Indicators / Outputs</b>
Agency operational budget	Within year one.	Formalised MoU ToR of Steering Committee an inter-agency capacity development and exchange strategy
<b>Challenges:</b> Formalizing inter-agency agreements		

<b>5.3.1.2 ACTION: ENGAGE AND COLLABORATE WITH STAKEHOLDERS FOR BONTEBOK CONSERVATION</b>		
<b>Lead agencies:</b>	CN, SANPARKS	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD, DEA, DAFF	
<b>Collaborators:</b>	WRSA, SAHGCA, Private sector, NZG, Higher Education Institutions	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Communicate bontebok BMP-S objectives and requirements to stakeholders 2) Compile a bontebok driven stakeholder conservation education strategy 3) Develop a communication strategy to communicate with stakeholders 4) Engage with DAFF to align the bontebok communication strategy with their initiatives	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Multi stakeholder involvement in bontebok conservation	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Number of stakeholder engagements.	
<b>Funding / Resources</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>	<b>Measurable Indicators / Outputs</b>

Agency operational budgets	Within one year of implementation.	Approved People and Parks Conservation Strategy, Approved communication strategy
Challenges:		

**Objective Target 3.3 Increase public awareness and education on the status and threats facing bontebok**

**Objective Target 3.2 Increase private sector investment and support for bontebok conservation**

<b>5.3.1.3 ACTION: DEVELOP NATIONAL BONTEBOK TRANSLOCATION GUIDELINES</b>		
<b>Lead agencies:</b>	DEA ToPS	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	SANPARKS, CN, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD	
<b>Collaborators:</b>	WRSA, SAHGCA, Private sector, NZG, Wildlife Translocation Association	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Develop a national translocation guideline for bontebok	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) National effective compliance enforcement.	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Documents guidelines.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operation budget	Within one year of gazetting	Approved National Translocation Guidelines for Bontebok.
Challenges:		

<b>5.3.2.1 ACTION: DEVELOP INCENTIVES FOR STAKEHOLDERS TO PARTICIPATE IN AND CONTRIBUTE TO ACHIEVING THE OBJECTIVE OF THE BONTEBOK BMP-S.</b>		
<b>Lead agencies:</b>	CN, SANParks, DEA	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD, DAFF	
<b>Collaborators:</b>	WRSA, SAHGCA, Private sector, stewardship agencies	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Investigate and develop appropriate incentives for participation in bontebok conservation, in consultation with stakeholders 2) Develop incentive strategy for participation in the bontebok meta-population management strategy 3) Align incentives with Wildlife Economy Strategy	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Increased stakeholder participation in bontebok conservation	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Incentives developed 2) Incentive strategy developed for meta-population management	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budgets	Within two years of gazetting	Incentive strategy
Challenges:		

<b>5.3.3.1 ACTION: IMPLEMENT ENVIRONMENTAL EDUCATION AND EXTENSION INITIATIVES TO PROMOTE AWARENESS ON THE STATUS AND THREATS FACING BONTBOK.</b>		
<b>Lead agencies:</b>	SANParks, CN	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD	
<b>Collaborators:</b>	WRSA, SAHGCA, Private sector	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Develop resources and tools to facilitate environmental education and extension 2) Engage with DAFF land care programs (Smart Agric Program etc.)	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) More informed public and stakeholders benefiting from flagship environmental awareness programmes	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Number of awareness materials/tools 2) Number of interventions implemented	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Within two years of gazetting	Awareness tools/brochures developed Awareness interventions implemented
Challenges: Accurate and consistent information disseminated.		

**5.4 OBJECTIVE 4: TO INVESTIGATE AND CONDUCT RESEARCH AIMED AT SUPPORTING ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT AND THE IMPLEMENTATION OF BONTBOK CONSERVATION**

**Objective Target 4.1 Conduct research into the viability of available habitat for bontebok**

<b>5.4.1.1 ACTION: IDENTIFY AND IMPLEMENT RESEARCH ON HABITAT MANAGEMENT (INCLUDING IMPROVEMENT, REHABILITATION AND POTENTIAL IMPACTS OF CLIMATE CHANGE) FOR BONTBOK.</b>		
<b>Lead agencies:</b>	CN, SANParks	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>		
<b>Collaborators:</b>	Higher Education Institutions, Lowland Renosterveld Conservation Trust, Private sector	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Identify research gaps and communicate research needs 2) Facilitate research to inform appropriate bontebok habitat management, (incorporate fire, alien vegetation, predation and game stocking where applicable) 3) Implement best-practice and research findings for integrated fire-alien vegetation-game stocking-predation for bontebok habitat management 4) Maintain a register of relevant research 5) Distribute research results in communication strategy.	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Appropriate research for bontebok conservation undertaken to inform strategic adaptive management strategies.	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Research projects registered and undertaken. 2) Publications	

Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operation budget	Immediate	Research papers/thesis Researcher database
Challenges: Communicating research requirements efficiently		

**Objective Target 4.2 Conduct research into the effects of implemented policies for bontebok**

<b>5.4.2.1 ACTION: MONITOR THE IMPACTS OF THE IMPLEMENTATION OF A HYBRID THRESHOLD FOR TRANSLOCATIONS ON GENETIC DIVERSITY</b>		
<b>Lead agencies:</b>	CN, NZG, SANParks	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD, DEA ToPS & CITES	
<b>Collaborators:</b>	UFS, UWC, SUN, Cardiff University, Tennessee University, WRSA, Private sector	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Research and develop appropriate monitoring framework to detect and predict potential impacts on the genetic diversity resulting from the implementation of a hybrid threshold value for translocations on source populations 2) Develop genetic management recommendations for reintroduced, reinforced and mixed sub-populations 3) Implement and monitor the effects of implementing genetic management recommendations for reintroduced, reinforced and mixed sub-populations	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Effective Policy implementation and decrease in hybridisation events	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	3) Research project registered 4) Policy monitoring and evaluation framework	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Research funding to be sourced	Within four years of gazetting	Monitoring framework Research publications/thesis
Challenges: Funding		

**Objective Target 4.3 Conduct health and fitness research of bontebok**

<b>5.4.3.1 ACTION: CONDUCT RESEARCH TO QUANTIFY THE EXTENT AND SEVERITY OF POSSIBLE DISEASE OCCURRENCE IN BONTEBOK.</b>		
<b>Lead agencies:</b>	NZG, CN, SANParks	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>		
<b>Collaborators:</b>	SUN, Higher Education Institutions, Private sector	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Research and develop the screening of innate immunity genes in bontebok to identify disease associated mutations as well as determine diversity of these genes 2) Research aetiological agents of disease to further knowledge and understanding of epidemiology.	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Research results published 2) Parasite prevalence data	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Peer reviewed papers 2) Known parasite load and distribution.	

Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Research funding to be sourced	Within two years of gazetting	Parasite Load Assessments for sampled sub-populations
Challenges:		

5.4.3.2 ACTION: ASSESS THE REPRODUCTIVE FITNESS OF BONTEBOK SUB-POPULATIONS.		
<b>Lead agencies:</b>	NZG, CN, SANParks	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>		
<b>Collaborators:</b>	UWC, Higher Education Institutions, Private sector	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Research and develop reproductive fitness assessment of bontebok: 2) Integrate results into management recommendations 3) Engage with State Vet to collaborate on research	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Fundamental and applied research conducted to further knowledge and understanding of bontebok reproduction	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Peer reviewed papers	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Research funding to be sourced	Within two years of gazetting	Reproductive fitness assessments for known sub-populations
Challenges:		

## 6) BONTBOK BMP-S REPORTING FRAMEWORK

Below is the outline of the reporting framework based on the draft provided by DEA. It indicates the actions and the responsible reporting agencies.

ACTIONS	RESPONSIBLE AGENCY	TIMELINE	RESOURCES NEEDED	COLLABORATORS	DELIVERABLES	MEASURABLE OUTCOMES	PROGRESS	CHALLENGES / CORRECTIVE MEASURES
<b>OBJECTIVE 1</b>								
<b>CONSERVE THE GENETIC INTEGRITY AND DIVERSITY OF BONTBOK</b>								
<b>Objective Target 1.1</b>								
<b>Conserve genetically diverse meta-population</b>								
1.1.1 Develop a sound meta-population management guideline.	CN, SANParks, SANBI/NZG, DAFF	Within two years of BMP being gazetted	Agency operational budget	Private sector, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, NC DENC, WRSA, WPA, SAHGCA, Higher Education Institutions	Meta-population management implemented – increased genetic resilience/diversity	Meta-population management guideline; Assessment of sub-populations		
1.1.2 Investigate the genetic diversity of the bontbok and develop models and national protocols to maintain genetic diversity and integrity in bontbok.	CN, SANParks, DEA, NZG, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD	Immediate	Agency operational budget	UFS, UWC, Cardiff University, Tennessee University, WRSA, SAHGCA, Private sector, SUN, UCT	Standardised genetic testing. Genetic diversity of subpopulations known to inform adaptive management of meta-population strategy implementation.	Genetic sampling protocol standardised and implemented consistently in South Africa. Centralised depository		
<b>Objective Target 1.2</b>								
<b>Safeguard bontbok against hybridisation</b>								
1.2.1 Manage the risk of hybridisation of bontbok with blesbok.	SANParks, CN, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA,	Immediate	Agency operational budget	WRSA, SAHGCA, Private sector	Decrease in instances of hybridisation	Hybrid detection and hybrid risk assessment protocols		



ACTIONS	RESPONSIBLE AGENCY	TIMELINE	RESOURCES NEEDED	COLLABORATORS	DELIVERABLES	MEASURABLE OUTCOMES	PROGRESS	CHALLENGES / CORRECTIVE MEASURES
	NC DENC, NW DREAD							
1.2.2 Develop a list of priority sites for reinforcement and reintroduction.	CN, SANParks	Within two years of BMP being gazetted	Agency operational budget	SANBI	Increased distribution of viable bontebok sub-populations in NDR	Priority sites identified; Site assessment, translocation and prioritisation guideline		
<b>Objective Target 1.3 Implement a meta population management framework</b>								
1.3.1 Maintain a centralised national bontebok population database.	SANBI: NZG, CN, SANParks, CN, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEAT, NC DENC, NW DREAD	Immediate	Agency operational budget	SANBI, WRSA, SAHGCA, Private sector	National centralised distribution database established	Spatial bontebok distribution databases		
1.3.2 Maintain a centralised national bontebok genetics database.	SANBI: NZG, SANParks, CN, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEAT, NC DENC, NW DREAD	Immediate	Agency operational budget	DEA, SANBI, WRSA, SAHGCA, WPA, Private sector	National centralised database established and linked to distribution database	Bontebok DNA profiles		
<b>Objective Target 1.4 Long term monitoring of bontebok sub-populations</b>								
1.4.1 Implement standardised bontebok survey	CN, SANParks, CN, ECPTA,	Immediate	Agency operational budget /	SANBI, WRSA, Private sector	Accurate population trend data informing	Precise game censuses;		

ACTIONS	RESPONSIBLE AGENCY	TIMELINE	RESOURCES NEEDED	COLLABORATORS	DELIVERABLES	MEASURABLE OUTCOMES	PROGRESS	CHALLENGES / CORRECTIVE MEASURES
and monitoring protocols for protected areas to inform adaptive management.	EC DEDEAT, NC DENC		Additional funding for aerial census required.		strategic adaptive management	standardised monitoring protocols		
1.4.2 Coordinate annual bontebok sub-population status reports.	SANBI, CN, SANParks, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD	Immediate	Agency operational budget	DEA	Quality bontebok sub-population data	Standardised annual reporting and status reports		
1.4.3 Monitor population performance and habitat condition for bontebok on private land.	CN, SANParks ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD	Within three years of the BMPs being gazetted	Agency operational budget/Contributions from Private Sector	SANBI, WPA, SAHGCA, Private Sector	Viable populations established and maintained	Standardised habitat and population assessments for introductions		
<b>OBJECTIVE 2</b>	<b>PREVENT FURTHER HABITAT LOSS AND HABITAT DEGRADATION, AND ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN HABITAT CONNECTIVITY</b>							
<b>Objective Target 2.1</b>	<b>Restore habitat and connectivity</b>							
2.1.1 Implement habitat expansion through stewardship, custodianship and connectivity corridors in the	CN, SANParks, DAFF, conservation agencies	Immediate	Agency operational budget. Funding sourced for	DEA&DP, local municipalities Stewardship agencies, private landowners,	Increased distribution of bontebok in the natural distribution range	Fine-scale habitat map of possible stewardship/custodian sites		

ACTIONS	RESPONSIBLE AGENCY	TIMELINE	RESOURCES NEEDED	COLLABORATORS	DELIVERABLES	MEASURABLE OUTCOMES	PROGRESS	CHALLENGES / CORRECTIVE MEASURES
natural distribution range of bontebok.			land acquisition.	WWF/BirdLife SA, NGOs		Prioritised expansion/custodian sites Habitat suitability matrix		
2.1.2 Develop guidelines and implement habitat rehabilitation in the natural distribution range of bontebok	CN, SANParks, DAFF, DEA&DP, local municipalities	Within two years of gazetting	Agency operational budget and sourcing of funding from NGOs	Stewardship agencies, BGCMA, FPAs, Higher Education Institutions, EPWP, SANBI	Increased availability of viable habitat, Decreased density of alien vegetation	Rehabilitation guidelines. Alien Vegetation Management hectares cleared		
<b>OBJECTIVE 3</b>								
<b>Establish and maintain partnerships for bontebok conservation</b>								
3.1.1 Formalise inter-agency collaboration to coordinate and review the implementation of the bontebok BMP-S.	CN, SANPARKS, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD, DEA	Within year one of gazetting	Agency operational budget		Established and formalised Steering Committee; Improved inter-agency collaboration and coordination.	Formalised MoU ToR of Steering Committee, an inter-agency capacity development and exchange strategy		
3.1.2 Engage and collaborate with stakeholders for bontebok conservation.	CN, SANPARKS, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC	Within year one of gazetting	Agency operational budget	WRSA, SAHGCA, Private bontebok owners, NZG, Higher	Multi stakeholder involvement in bontebok conservation	Approved People and Parks Conservation Strategy, Approved communication strategy		

ACTIONS	RESPONSIBLE AGENCY	TIMELINE	RESOURCES NEEDED	COLLABORATORS	DELIVERABLES	MEASURABLE OUTCOMES	PROGRESS	CHALLENGES / CORRECTIVE MEASURES
3.1.3 Develop national bontebok translocation guidelines	DENC, NW DREAD, DEA, DAFF DEA: ToPS SANPARKS, CN, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEAT, NC DENC, NW DREAD	Within year one of gazetting	Agency operational budget	Education Institutions WRSA, SAHGCA, Private sector, NZG, Wildlife Translocation Association	National effective compliance enforcement	Approved National Translocation Guidelines for bontebok.		
<b>Objective Target 3.2 Increase private sector investment and support for bontebok conservation</b>								
3.2.1 Develop incentives for stakeholders to participate in and contribute to achieving the objective of the bontebok BMP-S.	CN, SANParks, DEA ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEAT, NC DENC, NW DREAD, DAFF	Within two years of gazetting	Agency operational budget	WRSA, SAHGCA, Private sector, stewardship agencies	Stakeholder participation in bontebok conservation	Incentive strategy		
<b>Objective Target 3.3 Increase public awareness and education on the status and threats facing bontebok</b>								
3.3.1 Implement environmental education and extension initiatives to promote awareness on the	SANParks, CN ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEAT, NC	Within two years of gazetting	Agency operational budget	WRSA, SAHGCA, Private Sector	More informed public and stakeholders benefiting from flagship environmental	Awareness tools/brochures developed Awareness interventions implemented		

status and threats facing bontebok	DENC, NW DREAD				awareness programmes		
<b>OBJECTIVE 4</b>	<b>INVESTIGATE AND CONDUCT RESEARCH AIMED AT SUPPORTING ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT AND THE IMPLEMENTATION OF BONTBOK CONSERVATION</b>						
<b>Objective Target 4.1</b>	<b>Conduct research into the viability of available habitat for bontebok</b>						
4.1.1 Identify and implement research on habitat management (including improvement, rehabilitation and potential impacts of climate change) for bontebok	CN, SANParks	Immediate	Agency operational budget.	Higher Education Institutions, Lowland Renosterveld Conservation Trust, Private Sector	Appropriate research for bontebok conservation undertaken to inform strategic adaptive management strategies	Research papers/thesis Researcher database	
<b>Objective Target 4.2</b>	<b>Conduct research into the effects of implemented policies for bontebok conservation</b>						
4.2.1 Monitor the impacts of the implementation of a hybrid threshold for translocations on genetic diversity	CN, NZG, SANParks, ECPTA, EC DEDEAT, FS DESTEA, NC DENC, NW DREAD, DEA: ToPS & CITES	Within four years of gazetting	Research funding to be sourced	UFS, UWC, SUN, Cardiff University, Tennessee University, WRSA, Private sector	Effective Policy implementation and decrease in hybridisation events	Monitoring framework Research publications/thesis	
<b>Objective Target 4.3</b>	<b>Conduct health and fitness research of bontebok</b>						
4.3.1 Conduct research to quantify the extent and severity of possible disease occurrence in bontebok	SANBI: NZG, SANParks, CN	Within two years of gazetting	Research funding to be sourced	SUN, Higher Education Institutions, Private sector	Research results published, Parasite prevalence data	Parasite Load Assessments for sampled sub-populations	

4.3.2 Assess the reproductive fitness of bontebok sub-populations	SANBI: NZG, SANParks, CN	Within two years of gazetting	Research funding to be sourced	UWC, Higher Education Institutions, Private sector	Fundamental and applied research conducted to further knowledge and understanding of bontebok reproduction	Reproductive fitness assessments for known sub-populations			
---	--------------------------	-------------------------------	--------------------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--



## 7) REFERENCES

2012. Report on how the International Union for Conservation of Nature is supporting the achievement of the Strategic Plan for Biodiversity 2011-2020 and the Aichi Biodiversity targets. Secretary, e. Hyderabad, India, Conference of the parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity.
- (PMG)., P. M. G. 2014. "Minutes - Provincial conservation: support, resources, challenges and constraints in implementing conservation mandate: Department of Environmental Affairs briefing." Retrieved 17 February, 2016., from <https://pmg.org.za/committee-meeting/17878/>.
- Akçakaya, H. R., Mills, G., Doncaster, C. P. 2007. The role of Meta-populations in conservation. Macdonald, D., Service, K. Key Topics in Conservation Biology. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, UK. 64 - 84.
- Allendorf, F., Leary, R., Spruell, P., Wenburg, J. 2001. "The problems with hybrids: setting conservation guidelines." Trends in Ecology & Evolution 16, 613-622.
- Barnard, P. J., van der Walt, K. 1961. Translocation of Bontebok *Damaliscus pygargus* from Bredasdorp to Swellendam, Cape Parks and Division of Veterinary Services.
- Birss, C. 2014. Conservation in a Regulatory Framework Kotze, A., Lane, E., Nxomani, C. One Health. Centre for Wildlife Health, National Zoological Garden of South Africa, Pretoria.
- Birss, C., Rushworth, I., Collins, N.B., Peinke, D. & Buijs, D. 2015. Inferred Natural distribution ranges of large mammals in South Africa, Version 1. Unpublished GIS coverage.
- Boomker, J., Horak, I. G. 1992. "Parasites of South African wildlife. XIII. Helminths of grey rhebuck, *Pelea capreolus*, and of bontebok, *Damaliscus dorcas dorcas*, in the Bontebok National Park." Onderstepoort Journal of Veterinary Research 59, 175-182.
- Boomker, J., Horak, I. G., Gibbons, L. M., De Vos, V. 1983. "Haemonchus contortus from the vaal ribbok *Pelea capreolus*, and the bontebok *Damaliscus dorcas dorcas*, in the Bontebok National Park." Onderstepoort Journal of Veterinary Research 50, 179-181.
- Boomker, J. D. F. 1990. A comparative study of the Helminth fauna of browsing antelope of South Africa, Medical University of South Africa. DSc.
- Boshoff, A. F., Landman, M., Kerley, G. I. H. 2015. Filling the gaps on the maps: historical distribution patterns of some larger mammals in part of southern Africa. Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa, Pretoria, University of South Africa Press.
- Broders, H., Mahoney, S., Montevecchi, W., Davidson, W. 1999. "Population genetic structure and the effect of founder events on the genetic variability of moose, *Alces alces*, in Canada." Molecular Ecology 8, 1309-1315.
- Burger, B. V., Le Roux, M., Garbers, C. F., Spies, H. S. C., Bigalke, R. C., Pachler, K. G. R., Wessels, P. L., Christ, V., Maurer, K. H. 1976. "Studies on mammalian pheromones I. Ketones from the pedal gland of the bontebok (*Damaliscus dorcas dorcas*)." Zeitschrift fur Naturforschung A: Journal of Physical Sciences 32, 21-28.
- Burger, B. V., Le Roux, M., Garbers, C. F., Spies, H. S. C., Bigalke, R. C., Pachler, K. G. R., Wessels, P. L., Christ, V., Maurer, K. H. 1977. "Further compounds from the pedal gland of the bontebok (*Damaliscus dorcas dorcas*)." Zeitschrift fur Naturforschung A: Journal of Physical Sciences 32, 49-56.
- Carr A.S., Chase B.M. and Mackay A. 2016. Mid to Late Quaternary landscape and environmental dynamics in the Middle Stone Age of southern South Africa. In: Jones S.C. and Stewart B.A. (eds) Africa from MIS 6-2: Population dynamics and Paleoenvironments, Vertebrate Paleobiology and Paleoanthropology. DOI 10.1007/978-94-017-7520-5\_2
- Compton J.S. 2011. Pleistocene sea-level fluctuations and human evolution on the southern coastal plain of South Africa. Quaternary Science Reviews 30:506-527.
- Cowling, R. M., Pierce, S. M., Moll, E. J. 1986. "Conservation and utilisation of South Coast Renosterveld, an endangered South African vegetation type." Biological Conservation 37, 363-377.
- de Graaff, G., Penzhorn, B. 1976. "The re-introduction of springbok *Antidorcas marsupialis* into South African National Parks—A documentation." Koedoe 19, 75-82.

- Du Toit, J. G., E., v. M.-K., Bothma, J. d. P. 2010. Genetic Management. Bothma, J. d. P., Du Toit, J. G. Game Ranch Management. Van Schaik Publishers, Pretoria. 391-401.
- Elmhagen, B., Angerbjörn, A. 2001. "The applicability of Meta-population theory to large mammals." OIKOS 94, 89-100.
- Essop, M. F., Harley, E. H., Lloyd, P. H., Van Hensbergen, H. J. 1991. "Estimation of the genetic distance between bontebok and blesbok using mitochondrial DNA." South African Journal of Science 87, 271-273.
- Estes, R. D. 1992. The behaviour guide to African Mammals. University of California Press, Ltd., London, England.
- Fabricius, C., Van Hensbergen, H. J., Zucchini, W. 1989. "A discriminant function for identifying hybrid bontebok X blesbok populations." South African Journal of Wildlife Research 19, 2.
- Fabriscius, C. 1991. "Bontebok and its hybrids: how to tell the difference." Natura 25: 34-35.
- Faith J.T. 2011. Ungulate community richness, grazer extinctions, and human subsistence behaviour in southern Africa's Cape Floral Region. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 306:219-227.
- Faith J.T. 2012. Palaeozoological insights into management options for a threatened mammal: southern Africa's Cape mountain zebra (*Equus zebra zebra*). Diversity and Distributions 18:438-447.
- Faith J.T. and Behrensmeyer A.K. 2013. Climate change and faunal turnover: testing the mechanics of the turnover-pulse hypothesis with South African fossil data. Paleobiology 39(4):609-627.
- Frankham, R., Ballou, J. D., Briscoe, D. A. 2002. Introduction to Conservation Genetics. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge. United Kingdom.
- Fujimoto, T., Hotei, Y., Takeuchi, H., Tanaka, S., Ohta, K., Yamamoto, I. 1991. "Chemistry of cyclic phosphorous compounds. 4. Syntheses of the sex pheromone from the pedal gland of bontebok and some 1,4-Diketones by use of 1,1-Diphenylphosphonium Perchlorate." Journal of Organic Chemistry 56, 4799-4802.
- Furstenburg, D. 2016. BONTBOK *Damaliscus pygargus pygargus* (Pallas, 1766). Wildlife Biologist Scientific Report. GEO WILD Consult (Pty) Ltd.
- Goitom, H. 2013. "Wildlife Trafficking and Poaching: South Africa." Retrieved 17 February 2016, from <https://www.loc.gov/law/help/wildlife-poaching/southafrica.php>
- Gray, A. P. 1971. Mammalian Hybrids - A Checklist with Bibliography. Farnham Royal, Slough SL2 3BN. England, Commonwealth Agricultural Bureaux.
- Grubb, P. 1993. Order Artiodactyla. In Wilson, D.E. & Reeder, D.M. (eds.) Mammal Species of the World, Second Edition. Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington and London.: 377-414.
- Hanski, I. 1999. Meta-population Ecology. Oxford University Press, Oxford, UK.
- Helm C., Cawthra H., Cowling R., De Vynck J., Marean C., McCrea R. and Rust R. 2018. Palaeoecology of giraffe tracks in Late Pleistocene aeolianites on the Cape south coast. South African Journal of Science 114(1/2); 8 pages.
- Hoag C. and Svenning J-C. 2017. African environmental change from the Pleistocene to the Anthropocene. Annual Review of Environment and Resources 42:27-54.
- Horak, I. G., Boomker, J. 1998. "Parasites of domestic and wild animals in South Africa: XXXV: ixodid ticks and bot fly larvae in the Bontebok National Park." The Onderstepoort Journal of Veterinary Research 65, 205-211.
- Horak, I. G., Brown, M. R., Boomker, J., De Vos, V., Van Zyl, E. A. 1982. "Helminth and arthropod parasites of blesbok *Damaliscus dorcas phillipsi* and of bontebok *Damaliscus dorcas dorcas*." Onderstepoort Journal of Veterinary Research 49, 139-146.
- Horak, I. G., L.J., F., Boomker, J. 1997. "A ten-year study of ixodid tick infestations of bontebok and grey rhebok in Western Cape Province, South Africa." South African Journal of Wildlife Research 27, 5-10.
- Horak, I. G., Sheppey, K., Knight, M. M., Beuthin, C. L. 1986. "Parasites of domestic and wild animals in South Africa. XXI. Arthropod parasites of vaal ribbok, bontebok and scrub hares in the western Cape Province." Onderstepoort Journal of Veterinary Research 53, 187-197.

- Klein R.G. 1980. Environmental and ecological implications of large mammals from Upper Pleistocene and Holocene sites in southern Africa. *Annals of the South African Museum* 81:223-283.
- Klein R.G. 1983. Palaeoenvironmental implications of Quarternary large mammals in the fynbos region. In: H.J. Deacon, Q.B. Hendey and J.J.N. Lambrechts (eds). *Fynbos palaeoecology: a preliminary synthesis*. South African National Scientific Programmes Report 75:116-138, Cape Town.
- Klein R.G. and Cruz-Urbe K. 1987. Largew mammal and tortoise bones from Eland's Bay Cave and nearby sites, Western Cape Province, South Africa. Pp. 132-163 In: J.E. Parkington and M. Hall (eds). *Papers in the prehistory of the Western Cape, South Africa*. BAR International Series 322. Archaeopress, Oxford.
- Kotze, A., Nxomani, C. 2011. "The National Zoological Gardens of South Africa: a National Research Facility." *International Zoo Yearbook* 45, 30-37.
- Kovalev, B. G., Sorochinskaya, A. M., Avdeeva, L. 1986. "Synthesis of cis-undec-5-en-2-one - the pheromone of the pedal glands of *Damaliscus dorcas dorcas*." *Chemistry of Natural Compounds* 22, 122.
- Kraaij, T., Novellie, P. A. 2010. "Habitat selection by large herbivores in relation to fire at the Bontebok National Park (1974–2009): the effects of management changes." *South African Journal of Range and Forage Science* 27, 21-27.
- Krug, R. M., Krug, C. B., Iponga, D. M., Newton, I. P., Shiponeni, N. N., Walton, B. A., Milton, S. J. 2004. *Reconstructing ecological processes in West Coast Renosterveld: the grazers, the fires and the humans*. Fynbos Forum. Langebaan: 36.
- Kumamoto, A. T., Charter, S. J., Houck, M. L., Frahm, M. 1996. "Chromosomes of *Damaliscus* (Artiodactyla, Bovidae): simple and complex centric fusion rearrangements." *Chromosome Research* 4, 614-621.
- Lindsey, P. A., Roulet, P. A., Romanach, S. S. 2007. "Economic and conservation significance of the trophy hunting industry in sub-Saharan Africa." *Biological Conservation* 134, 455 - 469.
- Luyt, E. d. C. 2005. Models of bontebok (*Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*, Pallas 1766) habitat preferences in the Bontebok National Park and sustainable stocking rates. Stellenbosch, University of Stellenbosch. MSc: 111.
- Margules, C. R. 2000. "Systematic conservation planning." *Nature* 405, 243-253.
- Mucina, L., Rutherford, M. C. 2006. The vegetation of South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland. . South African National Biodiversity Institute, Pretoria.
- Myers, N., Mittermeier, R. A., Mittermeier, C. G., Fonseca, G. A. B. d., Kent, J. 2000. "Biodiversity hotspots for conservation priorities." *Nature* 403, 853-858.
- Novellie, P. 1986. "Relationships between rainfall, population density and the size of the bontebok lamb crop in the Bontebok National Park." *South African Journal of Wildlife Research* 16, 39-46.
- Novellie, P. 1987. "Interrelationships between fire, grazing and grass cover at the Bontebok National Park." *Koedoe* 30, 1-17.
- Novellie, P., Kraaij, T. 2010. "Evaluation of Themeda triandra as an indicator for monitoring the effects of grazing and fire in the Bontebok National Park." *Koedoe* 52, 1-5.
- Olivier, P. I., Van Aarde, R. J., Ferreira, S. M. 2009. "Support for a Meta-population structure among mammals." *Mammal Review* 39, 178 - 192.
- Ortlepp, R. J. 1962. "Lungworms from South African antelopes." *Onderstepoort Journal of Veterinary Research* 29, 173-181.
- Penzhorn, B. L. 1971. "A summary of the re-introduction of ungulates into South African National Parks (to December 1970)." *Koedoe* 14, 145 - 159.
- Penzhorn, B. L., Novellie, P. A. 1991. "Some behavioural traits of Cape mountain zebras (*Equus zebra zebra*) and their implications for the management of a small conservation area." *Applied Animal Behavioural Science* 29, 293 - 299.
- Skead, C. J. 1982. Historical Mammal Incidence in the Cape Province. Western and Northern Cape. Cape Town, Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation. 1.

- Skead, C. J. 2011. Historical Incidence of the Larger Land Mammals in the Broader Northern and Western Cape. Second Centre for African Conservation Ecology and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, Port Elizabeth.
- Skinner, J. D., Chimimba, C. T. 2005. The mammals of the southern African subregion. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Skinner, J. D., Smithers, R. H. N. 1990. The Mammals of the Southern African Subregion. Pretoria University Press, Pretoria.
- Steele T.E. 2007. Late Pleistocene of Africa. Vertebrate Records. Pp. 3139-3150.
- Strauss, T. 2015. Cape mountain zebra (*Equus zebra zebra*) habitat use and diet in the Bontebok National Park, South Africa., Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University. PhD: 179.
- Sutton M.B., Pickering T.R., Brain C.K., Clarke R.J. Heaton J.L. and Kuman K. 2009. Newly discovered fossil- and artefact-bearing deposits, uranium series ages, and Plio-Pleistocene hominids at Swartkrans Cave, South Africa. *Journal of Human Evolution* 57:688-696.
- Rector A.L. and Reed K.E. 2010. Middle and Late Pleistocene faunas of Pinnacle Point and their paleoecological implications. *Journal of Human Evolution* 59:340-357.
- Van der Walt, J., Nel, L. H., Hoelzel, A. R. 2001. "Characterization of major histocompatibility complex DRB diversity in the endemic South African antelope *Damaliscus pygargus*: a comparison in two subspecies with different demographic histories. ." *Molecular Ecology*. 10, 1679-1688.
- Van Rensburg, A. P. J. 1975. "Die geskiedenis van die Nasionale Bontebokpark, Swellendam." *Koedoe* 18, 165-190.
- Van Wyk, A. M., Dalton, D. L., Hoban, S., Bruford, M. W., Russo, I., Birss, C., Grobler, P., Janse van Vuuren, B., Kotze, A. 2016. "Quantative evaluation of hybridization and the impact on biodiversity conservation." *Ecology and Evolution* in press.
- Van Wyk, A. M., Kotze, A., Randi, E., Dalton, D. L. 2012. "A hybrid dilemma: a molecular investigation of South African bontebok (*Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*) and blesbok (*Damaliscus pygargus phillipsi*)." *Conservation Genetics Resources Springer Science+Business Media B.V. Journal* 16.
- Van Wyk, A. M., Kotzé, A., Randi, E., Dalton, D. L. 2013. "A hybrid dilemma: a molecular investigation of South African bontebok (*Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*) and blesbok (*Damaliscus pygargus phillipsi*)." *Conservation Genetics* 14, 589-599.
- Verster, A., Imes, G. D., Smit, J. P. J. 1975. "Helminths recovered from the bontebok *Damaliscus dorcas dorcas* (Pallas, 1766). ." *Onderstepoort Journal of Veterinary Research* 42, 29-32.
- Vrba, E. 1979. "Phylogenetic analysis and classification of fossil and recent Alcelaphini Mammalia, Bovidae. ." *Biological Journal of the Linnean Society* 11, 207-228.
- Vrba E.S. 1997. New fossils of Alcelaphini and Caprinae (Bovidae, Mammalia) from Awash, Ethiopia, and phylogenetic analysis of Alcelaphini. *Paleontologia Africana* 34:127-198.
- Winkler, A., Owen-Smith, N. 1995. "Habitat utilisation by Cape mountain zebras in the mountain Zebra National Park, South Africa." *Koedoe* 38, 83-93.
- Zumt, I. F., Heine, E. W. P. 1978. "Some veterinary aspects of bontebok in the Cape of Good Hope Nature Reserve." *South African Journal of Wildlife Research* 8, 131-134.

## APPENDIX A: BONTEBOK BMP-S WORKSHOP AGENDA





**BONTEBOK BIODIVERSITY MANAGEMENT PLAN WORKSHOP****VENUE: CRC HALL****28 November 2013****Purpose of Workshop:**

The aim of this workshop is to produce a draft biodiversity management plan for bontebok. The draft BMP-s will then be summarized and presented to the workshop participants for comment. Following this the BMP-s will be submitted for gazetting and on approval will be published.

<b>WELCOME AND INTRODUCTION</b>	08h30-08h45	Carly Cowell
Feedback of NDF	08h45-09h15	Jeanetta Selier
Presentation status of bontebok, selection for BMP-s	09h15-09h30	Coral Birss
Overview of BMP	09h30-10h00	Coral Birss
<b>TEA</b>	<b>10h00-10h30</b>	
BMP-s Planning Outline	10h30-10h50	Coral Birss
Desired state formulation	10h50-11h50	Carly Cowell
Hierarchy of objectives	11h50-12h45	Carly Cowell
<b>LUNCH</b>	<b>12h45-13H30</b>	
Threat identification	13h30-14h00	Carly Cowell
Action plans outlines	14h00-15h00	Group work
<b>TEA</b>	<b>15h00</b>	
Close & way forward	15h00-15h30	Coral & Carly

**environmental affairs**

Department:  
Environmental Affairs  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**SANBI**  
Biodiversity for Life

**APPENDIX A: BONTEBOK BMP-S WORKSHOP PARTICIPANTS**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Organisation</b>	<b>Email address</b>
Bontle Morwe	DEA	<a href="mailto:morweb@detea.fs.gov.za">morweb@detea.fs.gov.za</a>
Buntu Mzamo	DEDEAT	<a href="mailto:buntu.mzamo@dedea.gov.za">buntu.mzamo@dedea.gov.za</a>
Carly Cowell	SANParks	<a href="mailto:Carly.Cowell@sanparks.org">Carly.Cowell@sanparks.org</a>
Christine Kraft	Department of Environment Northern Cape	<a href="mailto:christine.dtec@gmail.com">christine.dtec@gmail.com</a>
Coral Birss	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:cbirss@capenature.co.za">cbirss@capenature.co.za</a>
Danelle Kleinhans	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:dkleinhans@capenature.co.za">dkleinhans@capenature.co.za</a>
Deon Hignett	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:dhignett@capenature.co.za">dhignett@capenature.co.za</a>
David Zimmerman	SANParks	<a href="mailto:david.zimmerman@sanparks.org">david.zimmerman@sanparks.org</a>

Dean Peinke	Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency	<a href="mailto:Dean.peinke@ecpta.co.za">Dean.peinke@ecpta.co.za</a>
Peter Novellie	SANParks	<a href="mailto:peter.novellie@sanparks.org">peter.novellie@sanparks.org</a>
Guy Palmer	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:gpalmer@capenature.co.za">gpalmer@capenature.co.za</a>
Jaco van Deventer	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:jvdeventer@capenature.co.za">jvdeventer@capenature.co.za</a>
Jeanetta Selier	South African National Biodiversity Institute	<a href="mailto:J.Selier@sanbi.org.za">J.Selier@sanbi.org.za</a>
Johan Strydom	Free State Bontebok Owners Association	<a href="mailto:strydomjak@telkomsa.net">strydomjak@telkomsa.net</a>
Justin Buchman	SANParks	<a href="mailto:Justin.Buchman@sanparks.org">Justin.Buchman@sanparks.org</a>
Mick D'Alton	Nuwejaars SMA-Agulhas	<a href="mailto:mandjdalton@omail.co.za">mandjdalton@omail.co.za</a>
Natalie Hayward	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:nhayward@capenature.co.za">nhayward@capenature.co.za</a>
Nosipho Tyagana	SANParks	<a href="mailto:nosipho.tyagana@sanparks.org">nosipho.tyagana@sanparks.org</a>
Conrad Matthee	Stellenbosch University	<a href="mailto:cam@sun.ac.za">cam@sun.ac.za</a>
Roland January	SANParks	<a href="mailto:Roland.January@sanparks.org">Roland.January@sanparks.org</a>
Stephen Mitchell	WRSa	<a href="mailto:smitchell@nashuaisp.co.za">smitchell@nashuaisp.co.za</a>
Tebogo Mashua	DEA	<a href="mailto:TMashua@environment.gov.za">TMashua@environment.gov.za</a>
Trevor Adams	SANParks	<a href="mailto:Trevor.Adams@sanparks.org">Trevor.Adams@sanparks.org</a>
Zishan Ebrahim	SANParks	<a href="mailto:zishan.ebrahim@sanparks.org">zishan.ebrahim@sanparks.org</a>

## APPENDIX B: CONTRIBUTORS TO COMPILING THE BMP

- SANParks Working group and Contributors (Scientific Services, Veterinary Wildlife Services and Parks)
  - Carly Cowell
  - Trevor Adams
  - Roland January
  - Justin Buchman
  - Pierre Nel
  - Carmen Gagiano
  - Dr Nicola Van Wilgen
  - Dr Dave Zimmerman
  - Dr Peter Novellie
  - Dr Sam Ferreira
- CapeNature Technical Working Group and Contributors
  - Dr Andrew Turner
  - Natalie Hayward
  - Lee Saul
  - Johan Huisamen
  - Dr AnneLise Schutte-Vlok
  - Alexis Olds and Dr Antoinette Veldtman
  - Dr Ernst Baard
  - Gail Cleaver-Christie
  - Jaco van Deventer



- Deon Hignett
  - Tom Barry
  - Graham Lewis
  - Blanche de Vries
  - Coral Birss
  - Ivan Donian
- February 2014: Comments and Contributions to first draft
  - Mick D'Alton
  - Steven Mitchell
  - Johan Strydom
  - Deon Hignett
  - Christine Kraft
  - Dave Zimmerman
  - Dean Pineke
  - Peter Novellie
  - Jeanetta Selier
  - Alan Southwood
  - Desire Dalton
  - Humbu Mafumo
  - Tebogo Mashua
- September 2016: Comments and Contributions to second draft
  - Mick D'Alton
  - Christine Kraft
  - Dave Zimmerman
  - Dean Pineke
  - Peter Novellie
  - Jeanetta Selier
  - Alan Southwood
  - Desire Dalton
  - Antoinette Kotze
  - Jaco van Deventer
  - Coral Birss
  - Guy Palmer
  - Thea Carroll
  - Humbu Mafumo
  - Tebogo Mashua
- Jan-Mar 2019: Comments and contribution to the final draft
  - Coral Birss
  - Ernst Baard
  - Jaco van Deventer
  - Humbu Mafumo
  - Tebogo Mashua
  - Jeanetta Seliers

**APPENDIX C: TEMPLATE FOR SUGGESTED EDITS/ADDITIONS/CHANGES**

TEMPLATE FOR SUGGESTED EDITS / ADDITIONS / CHANGES TO THE DRAFT	
Section:	Page:
Section content:	
Nature of comment:	Edit / Change / Deletion / Addition / Recommendation
Action taken:	
NOTES:	
Section:	Page:
Section content:	
Nature of comment:	Edit / Change / Deletion / Addition / Recommendation
Action taken:	
NOTES:	
Section:	Page:
Section content:	
Nature of comment:	Edit / Change / Deletion / Addition / Recommendation
Action taken:	
NOTES:	
Section:	Page:
Section content:	
Nature of comment:	Edit / Change / Deletion / Addition / Recommendation
Action taken:	
NOTES:	
Section:	Page:
Section content:	
Nature of comment:	Edit / Change / Deletion / Addition / Recommendation
Action taken:	
NOTES:	
Section:	Page:
Section content:	
Nature of comment:	Edit / Change / Deletion / Addition / Recommendation
Action taken:	
NOTES:	

**APPENDIX D:**

## AGENDA

BONTEBOK BIODIVERSITY MANAGEMENT PLAN:  
ACTIONS AND RELEVANT AGREEMENTS WORKSHOP

VENUE: Cape Research Centre 22 November 2016

**Purpose of Workshop:**

The aim of this workshop is to facilitate further collaboration between stakeholders to enable agreement between Lead and Implementing Agents for the successful implementation of the Bontebok BMP.

Tea	9:00 – 9:10	
DEA Welcome & Introduction	9:10 – 9:20	Wilma Lutsch
Overview of Process & Plan for the Day	9:20 – 9:40	Natalie Hayward
Icebreaker	9:30 – 10:40	All
Tea	10:40 – 10:50	
Session 1: Agreement on Action Plan	10:50 – 12:30	Natalie Hayward & All
Lunch	12:30 – 13:00	
Session 2: Agreement on Action Plan	13:00 – 14:45	Natalie Hayward & All
Wrap Up	14:45	Natalie Hayward
The Way Forward & Close	15:00	Carly Cowell

## APPENDIX D: ATTENDANCE REGISTER AND INVITEE LIST FOR THE ACTIONS AND RELEVANT AGREEMENTS WORKSHOP FOR THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE BONTEBOK BMP-S.

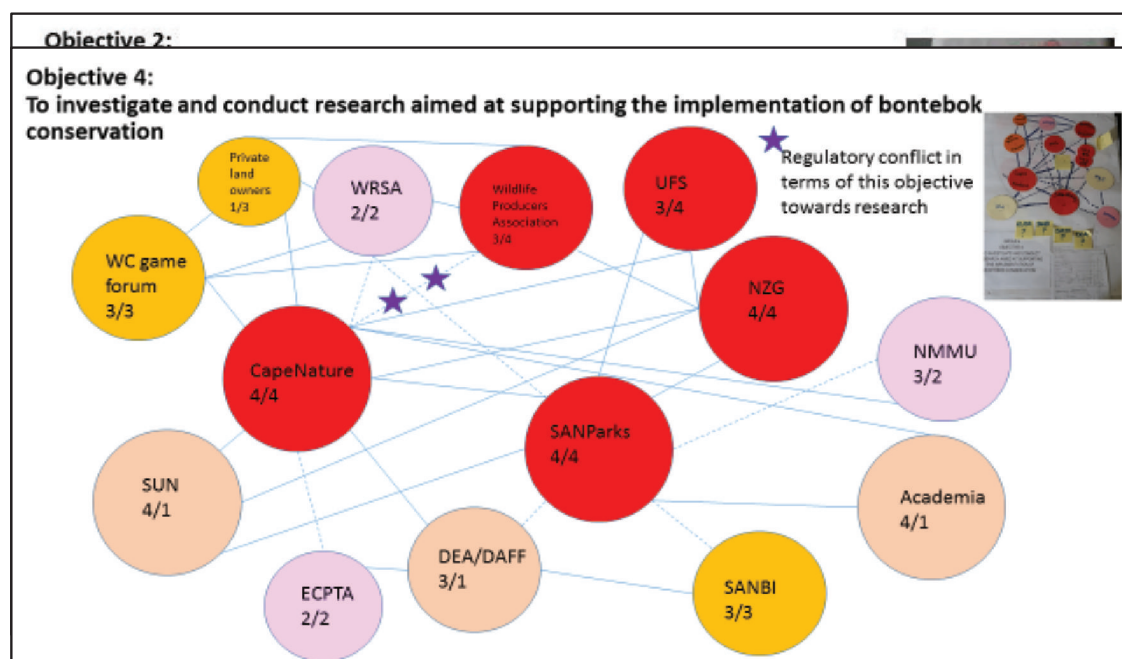
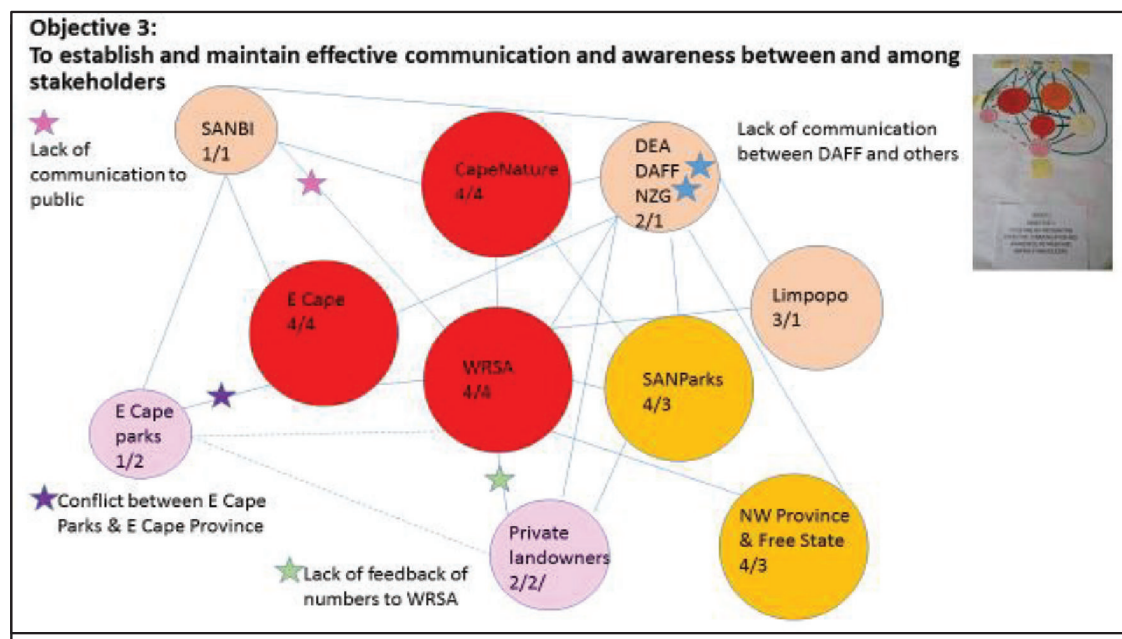


## ATTENDANCE REGISTER

**BONTEBOK BIODIVERSITY MANAGEMENT PLAN:  
ACTIONS AND RELEVANT AGREEMENTS WORKSHOP**  
VENUE: Cape Research Centre  
22 November 2016

NAME	ORGANISATION	CONTACT DETAILS	SIGNATURE
J. Buchmann	SANPARKS	021 780 9100	
C. Cowell	SANPARKS	021 713 7520	
S. E. van Niekerk	Denel COR	028 445 2119	
<b>Deon L. Hagedorn</b>	<b>CA</b>	<b>021 4830117</b>	
Deon F. Hagedorn	Seawild Conservancy/WPA	0725253287 deon@seawild.co.za	
Cori Bliss	CapeNature	031 866 8000	
Gail Cleaver	CapeNature	021 4830002	
Natalie Hagedorn	CapeNature	021 486 8000	
Antoinette Orla	NCA	0834566502	
Conrad Madun	U. Stellenbosch	0844534344	
Seantla Selu	SANBI	0834558063	
7900 W. B. van der	CapeNature	0824555566	
Mick Dalton	NUMERARY SIA	0826959835	
Amiba Mapho	DEA	0824858499	
Enzo Mashula	DEA	0828381032	
Ernst Daard	CapeNature	0214830003	
Conrad Kahls	WRSA	0824573260	
S. Morais	KRC CAJEL	0723029553	
Mike Gregor	ELANDSBERG	0825645667	
Wilma Lubbe	DEA	0123798821	

**APPENDIX E: VENN DIAGRAMS ON STAKEHOLDER RELATIONSHIPS TOWARDS  
ACHIEVING THE OBJECTIVES OF THE BMP-S: ACTIONS AND RELEVANT  
AGREEMENTS WORKSHOP FOR THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE  
BONTEBOK BMP-S.**



**APPENDIX F:** SUMMARY OF THE FIVE CRITERIA (A-E) USED TO EVALUATE IF A TAXON BELONGS IN AN IUCN RED LIST THREATENED CATEGORY (CRITICALLY ENDANGERED, ENDANGERED OR VULNERABLE).<sup>1</sup>

**A. Population size reduction.** Population reduction (measured over the longer of 10 years or 3 generations) based on



	Critically Endangered	Endangered	Vulnerable
A1	≥ 90%	≥ 70%	≥ 50%
A2, A3 & A4	≥ 80%	≥ 50%	≥ 30%
A1 Population reduction observed, estimated, inferred, or suspected in [except A3] the past where the causes of the reduction are clearly reversible AND AND have ceased.			(a) direct observation (b) an index of abundance understood appropriate to the taxon
A2 Population reduction observed, estimated, inferred, or suspected in the occupancy past where the causes of reduction may not have ceased OR may not be understood OR may not be reversible.			(c) a decline in area of (AOO), extent of (EEO) and/or habitat based on
<b>B. Geographic range in the form of either B1 (extent of occurrence) AND/OR B2 (area of occupancy)</b>			
	Critically Endangered	Endangered	Vulnerable
B1. Extent of occurrence (EOO)	< 100 km <sup>2</sup>	< 5,000 km <sup>2</sup>	< 20,000 km <sup>2</sup>
B2. Area of occupancy (AOO)	< 10 km <sup>2</sup>	< 500 km <sup>2</sup>	< 2,000 km <sup>2</sup>
AND at least 2 of the following 3 conditions:			
(a) Severely fragmented OR Number of locations	= 1	≤ 5	≤ 10
(b) Continuing decline observed, estimated, inferred or projected in any of: (i) extent of occurrence; (ii) area of occupancy; (iii) area, extent and/or quality of habitat; (iv) number of locations or subpopulations; (v) number of mature			
(c) Extreme fluctuations in any of: (i) extent of occurrence; (ii) area of occupancy; (iii) number of locations or subpopulations; (iv) number of mature individuals			
<b>C. Small population size and decline</b>			
	Critically Endangered	Endangered	Vulnerable
Number of mature individuals	< 250	< 2,500	< 10,000
AND at least one of C1 or C2			
C1. An observed, estimated or projected continuing decline of at least (up to a max. of 100 years in	25% in 3 years or 1 generation (whichever is	20% in 5 years or 2 generations (whichever is	10% in 10 years or 3 generations (whichever is
C2. An observed, estimated, projected or inferred continuing decline AND at least 1 of the following 3			
(a) (i) Number of mature individuals in each	≤ 50	≤ 250	≤ 1,000
(ii) % of mature individuals in one subpopulation =	90–100%	95–100%	100%
(b) Extreme fluctuations in the number of mature			
<b>D. Very small or restricted population</b>			
	Critically Endangered	Endangered	Vulnerable
D. Number of mature individuals	< 50	< 250	D1. < 1,000
D2. Only applies to the VU category			D2. typically: AOO < 20 km <sup>2</sup> or number of locations <
Restricted area of occupancy or number of locations with	-	-	
<b>E. Quantitative Analysis</b>			
	Critically Endangered	Endangered	Vulnerable



Indicating the probability of extinction in the wild to be:	≥ 50% in 10 years or 3 generations, whichever is longer (100 years max.)	≥ 20% in 20 years or 5 generations, whichever is longer (100 years max.)	≥ 10% in 100 years
---	---	---	--------------------

1 Use of this summary sheet requires full understanding of the *IUCN Red List Categories and Criteria* and *Guidelines for Using the IUCN Red List Categories and Criteria*.  
Please refer to both documents for explanations of terms and concepts used here.

## DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS

NO. 1568

06 DECEMBER 2019

**NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT ACT, 1998  
(ACT NO. 107 OF 1998)****DELEGATION OF POWERS AND DUTIES UNDER SECTION 87A(3)(b) OF THE NATIONAL  
ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT BIODIVERSITY ACT, 2004 (ACT NO. 10 OF 2004)**

I, Barbara Dallas Creecy, Minister of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries, hereby in terms of section 42(1)(a), read with section 42(2) and section (2B) of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998), and section 6(1) of the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004), delegate the powers and duties, in respect of considering and deciding on the application for permits, which vest in me by virtue of an agreement concluded in terms of section 87A(3)(b) of the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004), to the Director-General of the Department of Environmental Affairs or any functionary acting in that position. The powers and duties delegated to the Director-General may be sub-delegated.



**BARBARA DALLAS CREECY**  
**MINISTER OF ENVIRONMENT, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES**

## DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH

NO. 1569

06 DECEMBER 2019

## NURSING ACT, 2005 (Act No. 33 of 2005)

**Rules for Continuing Professional Development and Renewal of Registration**

The South African Nursing Council, in terms of section 59(1) of the Nursing Act, 2005 (Act No. 33 of 2005) intends, to make the Rules in the Schedule.

Interested persons are in terms of section 59(2) of the Nursing Act, 2005 (Act No. 33 of 2005) invited to submit any substantiated comments or representations on the proposed Rules to the Senior Manager Professional Practice, Private Bag X132, Pretoria, 0001, [jmuswede@sanc.co.za](mailto:jmuswede@sanc.co.za) (for the attention of the Manager CPD), within three (3) months of publication of this Notice.

**SCHEDULE**

The South African Nursing Council

---

Rules for Continuing Professional Development and Renewal of Registration

---

The South African Nursing Council has, in terms of Sections 39 and 59 of the Nursing Act, 2005 Act no.33 of 2005 resolved to introduce a compulsory Continuing Professional Development program, adherence to which will be a requirement for the renewal of registration each year.

---

## **1. AUTHORIZING PROVISION**

### **1.1 Conditions relating to continuing professional development**

**39.** The Council may determine:

- (a) conditions relating to continuing professional development to be undergone by practitioners in order to retain such registration;
- (b) the nature and extent of continuing professional development to be undergone by practitioners; and
- (c) the criteria for recognition by the Council of continuing professional development activities and accredited institutions offering such activities.

### **1.2 Rules**

**59.** (1) The Council may make rules relating to:

- (a) conditions relating to continuing professional development to be undergone by practitioners in order to retain such registration;
- (b) the nature and extent of continuing professional development to be undergone by practitioners;
- (c) the criteria for recognition by the Council of continuing professional development activities and of providers offering such activities; and
- (d) any other matter which must be promulgated as rules under this Act.

(2) The Council must, not less than three months before any rule is made under this Act:

- (a) publish such rule in the *Gazette* together with a notice declaring the Council's intention to make such rule; and
- (b) invite interested persons to comment thereon or to make representations with regard thereto.

## **2. OBJECTIVE**

The objective of these rules is to provide compliance mechanisms in relation to CPD requirements that must be fulfilled by practitioners registered under this Act

### 3. COMMENCEMENT

These rules come into operation upon publication in the Government Gazette.

### 4. DEFINITIONS

In these rules the following words and/or phrases shall have the meaning ascribed to them hereunder unless indicated otherwise:

**Area of Practice:** Field of practice in which the Nursing Practitioner is working (i.e. clinical nursing, occupational nursing, education and training, management, regulation and policy formulation

**Accreditation Certificate:** Document attesting that the Service Provider is authorized by SANC or other authorizing body recognized by SANC to offer CPD activity

**Continuing Professional Development (CPD):** A purposeful, statutory process whereby practitioners registered with SANC, engage in learning activities to maintain and improve their knowledge, skills, attitudes and professional integrity in order to keep up to date with new science, innovation and health care developments, and to practise safely, ethically, competently, and legally within their evolving scope of practice.

**CPD accreditation Standards/ Guidelines:** Statements or directives describing the qualities, responsibilities and expected levels of performance of an accredited CPD activity

**CPD Activity:** An individual or group learning activity that has been accredited by SANC-approved accreditors to create opportunities for Practitioners to gain knowledge, develop skills and shape their attitudes in order to maintain high professional standards.

**CPD approval panel/Accreditors:** Body appointed by SANC and constituted by experts in the profession of which at least one shall be a member of the relevant Professional Board. Accreditors will be responsible for certifying that CPD activities and providers meet the required criteria

**CPD Cycle:** Period in which a Practitioner is expected to accrue CPD points, beginning in July and ending in June of the following year.

**CPD Declaration:** Attestation by the Practitioner of completion of annual required CPD points

**CPD Framework:** Document outlining the process of continuing professional development as approved by Council

**CPD points:** Total credits gained by a Practitioner; equivalent to number of contact hours allotted to a CPD activity

**CPD point Allocation:** The number of CPD points assigned to a given activity based on CPD weighting criteria.

**CPD weighting:** Designation of CPD points based upon level of complexity of CPD activities

**CPD Service Provider:** Organization/institution/individual recognised by the SANC to provide CPD activities according to criteria defined in Section 10 of the CPD Framework.

**E-Learning:** The delivery of learning content via electronic media, including computers and mobile devices. Must be accompanied by a certificate or other proof of compliance to learning requirements.

**Ethical domain:** Codes that guide and influence the practice of nursing and midwifery.

**Facility-based learning:** Learning activities that take place at the Practitioner's work station, health unit or practice.

**Group activity:** Any organized event offered by a Service Provider in which three or more Practitioners are assembled for purposes of sharing information, building knowledge, developing skills and shaping attitudes on a subject of professional interest.

**Leadership:** A process of social influence which maximises the efforts of others towards the achievement of a goal.

**Legal domain:** Legislation and policies that govern and influence nursing.



**Leadership:** Process of social influence that maximizes the efforts of others towards the achievement of a goal.

**Management:** Process of reaching organizational goals by working with people and other organisations. **Portfolio of Evidence (PoE):** A collection of documentary proof of activities undertaken to accrue CPD points.

**Practitioner:** Any individual registered in terms of Section 31(1) of the Nursing Act (Act No. 33 of 2005).

**Recognition certificate:** Document attesting that the Service Provider is authorized by SANC or other authorizing body recognised by SANC to offer CPD activity

**Research:** A Scientific process to discover new or collate existing facts which contribute to the improvement or enrichment of nursing practice and the body of knowledge of nursing.

**Teaching:** Transfer of knowledge to colleagues and/or health care users.

**Training Needs Assessment:** Process by which the CPD training needs of a Practitioner are identified

**South African Nursing Council (SANC):** Council established in terms of section 2 \of the Nursing Act, 2005 (Act No 33 of 2005), \ which is the ultimate policymaking authority under the Act, and includes any Committee authorized to do so by the Council.

## 5. ABBREVIATIONS

In these rules the following abbreviations shall have the meaning ascribed to them hereunder unless indicated otherwise:

<b>AOP</b>	Area of Practice
<b>APC</b>	Annual Practicing Certificate
<b>CPD</b>	Continuing Professional Development
<b>EL</b>	Ethical Legal domain

<b>LM</b>	Leadership and Management
<b>POE</b>	Portfolio of Evidence
<b>PPA</b>	Packaged Point Allocation
<b>R</b>	Research
<b>SANC</b>	South African Nursing Council
<b>T</b>	Teaching
<b>TOR</b>	Terms of Reference

## **6. CPD OBLIGATIONS**

### **6.1 REQUIREMENTS**

According to the Nursing Act 2005 (Act No. 33 of 2005), every practitioner registered with SANC is to undertake CPD activities. A minimum of 15 CPD points will be required each year for the renewal of the Annual Practicing Certificate (APC).

Anyone who registers for the first time will be obliged to commence with the accumulation of CPD points from the month of registration. The Practitioner must refer to a section on "the eligibility to accrue fewer points" (Section 14 of the CPD Framework) if he/she is registered months after commencement of the CPD cycle

### **6.2 EXEMPTIONS**

Practitioners eligible for exemption include:

- (a) Those registered for formal education and training for a specific year  
(Proof of registration will be required);
- (b) Those working for five (5) or less months or less during the course of the CPD accrual cycle, such as those on sick leave or living/working outside of South Africa;
- (c) Retired nurses who are not working but choose to maintain their registration;

- (d) Those who wish to remain on the Register but whose area of practice is not in the field of nursing or midwifery;
- (e) Those on military and national assignments.
- (f) Those who are undertaking indigenous training

Practitioners eligible for exemption may apply to SANC in writing for a period of exemption from their annual CPD requirements e. The Exemption Form (Annexure 6 of the Framework) must state the reason why exemption is being sought.

Application for exemption must be accompanied by proof of eligibility for exemption. Exemptions are not automatic and will be decided by SANC on an individual basis. An administrative fee will apply.

### **6.3 EXTENSION**

Practitioners who, in extenuating circumstances, are unable to acquire the minimum number of CPD points for renewal of the Annual Practising Certificate may apply in writing to SANC for an extension in order to complete their CPD requirements stating the reason for the request. Extension will be granted for a period six months. At the end of the period of extension, the practitioner may be audited to ensure the CPD requirement has been met. Extensions are not automatic and will be determined by SANC on an individual basis. An administrative fee will apply.

### **6.4 ELIGIBILITY FOR ACCRUAL OF FEWER CPD POINTS**

Practitioners who worked for less than nine (9) months of the CPD accrual cycle may be eligible for accrual of fewer than 15 points. Practitioners working for six – nine (9) months of the accrual cycle must accrue a minimum of eight (8) CPD points across the five (5) thematic areas. Practitioners who are eligible for accrual of reduced number of points must apply in writing to SANC.

## **7. CPD CONTENT**

- 7.1 CPD activity should be accredited/recognised by SANC and should provide the Practitioner with the opportunity to gain knowledge; develop skills and shape attitudes
- 7.2 The activity must be offered by a SANC accredited/recognised Service Provider
- 7.3 The activity must address at least one of the five Thematic Areas (Section 8 of the Framework)

- 7.4 For the purpose of these rules, private study does not constitute a CPD activity, unless it involves utilization of accredited Audio-visual or eLearning materials specifically designed for the purpose of developing relevant knowledge and/or skills

#### **8. CPD POINT ALLOCATION CRITERIA**

A defined number of CPD points are allocated to a given activity based on the level of complexity and amount of participation required of the practitioner to complete for the activity. The number of points allocated to each activity is defined as "Packaged Point Allocation" (PPA) system, (See Table 1, Section 6.1 of the Framework).

#### **9. CPD CYCLE**

- 9.1 Practitioners are expected to accrue 15 CPD points during a 12 month period beginning 01 July in a given year up to 30 June of the next year (See Diagram 1, Section 7.2 of the Framework Version 3). Once all CPD points have been accrued during the period above, a Declaration of Compliance form may be submitted to SANC at any point until the deadline of 30 June.
- 9.2 A three (3) month extension period may be requested from July if required.
- 9.3 CPD accrual with the appropriate documentation during the July-June period will enable a practitioner to renew his or her APC for the following year.

#### **10. SCOPE**

CPD activities are divided into five (5) thematic areas: Ethical & Legal domain; Area of Practice; Leadership & Management; Teaching and Research. Practitioners are expected to acquire CPD points as outlined in section 8 of the CPD Framework Version 3.

#### **11. DOCUMENTATION**

Each Practitioner is expected to keep documentary evidence of CPD activities in the form of a Portfolio of Evidence (see *Annexure 3 of the CPD Framework*). The Portfolio of Evidence

must be kept for a period of three (3) years for audit purposes, and must be submitted for auditing should the practitioner be requested to do so by Council. CPD activities must be documented in a standardised Log-sheet (*See Annexure 4 of the Framework*). A SANC Declaration of Compliance form must be submitted to SANC by the 30<sup>th</sup> June of each year as a pre-requisite for renewal of the Annual Practising Certificate.

## 12. COMPLIANCE

Practitioners will be considered compliant if the required CPD points have been accrued and the Declaration of Compliance form has been submitted to Council prior to the annual deadline

## 13. NON-COMPLIANCE

The rule applies if the practitioner:

- (a) Fails to declare completion of required number of CPD points within the set time frame.
- (b) Fails to submit a POE within 21 days of a request for auditing.
- (c) Produces a POE that does not adequately support the Declaration of Compliance form if audited.
- (d) A practitioner who is found to be non-compliant will be contacted by SANC advising them of their non-compliant status and requesting a response to advise SANC within 21 days on the reasons for not completing their mandatory annual CPD requirement.

A practitioner who is found to be non-compliant will be unable to renew his or her Annual Practising Certificate.

The following steps may be taken against non-compliant practitioners:

- (a) An extension of an additional three (3) months will be given in order to accrue the remaining CPD points
- (b) Financial fine (to be determined by SANC) will be imposed;
- (c) Removal from the Register.

**14. AUDITING**

SANC will audit up to 10% of practitioners per annum by drawing a stratified sample.

Practitioners included in the sample will be required to submit their POEs to SANC.

**15. RIGHT TO APPEAL**

Any Practitioner who is aggrieved by finding of, and/or, remedial action imposed by the SANC CPD Committee, may appeal to the Full Council of the SANC, if the aggrieved party is not content with the decision and or remedial action imposed by the Full Council then such aggrieved party may appeal in terms of section 57 of the Nursing Act (Act no 33 of 2005). A decision by the Appeal Committee will be final.



**S.A. MCHUNU**

**REGISTRAR AND CEO**

**SOUTH AFRICAN NURSING COUNCIL**

**DATE:** 20/11/2019



## DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH

NO. 1570

06 DECEMBER 2019

**health**Department:  
Health  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA**CALL FOR NOMINATIONS OF MEMBERS TO SERVE ON THE PROFESSIONAL BOARDS OF THE HEALTH PROFESSIONS COUNCIL OF SOUTH AFRICA**

- (1) Notice is hereby given for the nomination of suitable candidates to be considered for appointment by the Honourable Minister of Health, Dr ZL Mkhize, to serve as **Community Representatives** on the following twelve (12) Professional Boards of the Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPCSA) for the new term of office effective from 1 July 2020 to 30 June 2025:
- (a) The Professional Board for Emergency Care Practitioners (3)
  - (b) The Professional Board for Medical and Dental Professions (8)
  - (c) The Professional Board for Optometry and Dispensing Opticians (3)
  - (d) The Professional Board for Environmental Health Practitioners (3)
  - (e) The Professional Board for Physiotherapy, Podiatry and Biokinetics (3)
  - (f) The Professional Board for Medical Technology (2)
  - (g) The Professional Board for Occupational Therapy, Medical Orthotics/Prosthetics and Arts Therapy (3)
  - (h) The Professional Board for Speech, Language and Hearing Professions (2)
  - (i) The Professional Board for Dietetics and Nutrition (2)
  - (g) The Professional Board for Radiography and Clinical Technology (3)
  - (h) The Professional Board for Psychology (4)
  - (i) The Professional Board for Dental Therapy and Oral Hygiene (2)
- (2) The HPCSA is a statutory body established in terms of the Health Professions Act, 1974 (Act No. 56 of 1974) ("the Act"), to serve and protect the public, and to provide guidance to registered healthcare practitioners. The Professional Boards of the HPCSA (as listed above), are established in terms of section 15(1) of the Act and the objects thereof are outlined in section 15A of the Act. The current term of office of the Professional Boards expire on 30 June 2020.
- (3) It should be noted that, in terms of Section 15(5)(b) of the Act, candidates who are nominated in the category of community representative **must not** be persons registered with the same Professional Board on which they are being nominated on.
- (4) Nominees should possess a minimum of a three (3) year National Diploma, Bachelors Degree or equivalent qualification, be able to demonstrate knowledge of the health sector, and have extensive experience in community health initiatives. All valid nominations will be vetted for compliance with the fitness and propriety requirements.
- (5) **Requirements of a valid nomination:** Nomination must be made on a prescribed nomination form obtainable from the Department of Health's website at [www.health.gov.za](http://www.health.gov.za) under **VACANCIES** or the Health Professions Council of South Africa's website at [www.hpcsa.co.za](http://www.hpcsa.co.za). Each nominee must be nominated on a separate nomination form. Only one Professional Board may be selected per nomination form. A

comprehensive CV of the nominee as well as a written motivation by the nominee should be attached, including certified copies of academic qualifications and other relevant supporting information.

- (6) **Submission of nominations:** Nominations forms, duly completed and signed, addressed to the Director-General, Department of Health and marked for the attention of the Director: Public Entities Governance, must be returned to the physical, postal or email address/fax number provided below by no later than **16h00 on 13 December 2019**. **Postal Address:** The Department of Health, Private Bag X828, Pretoria, 0001. **Physical Address:** The Department of Health, Civitas Building, Cnr Thabo Sehume (formerly known as Andries) and Struben Streets, Pretoria, 0001. **Email:** [Paul.Tsebe@health.gov.za](mailto:Paul.Tsebe@health.gov.za).

**Enquiries may be directed to:** Mr. Paul Tsebe at 012 395 9653.

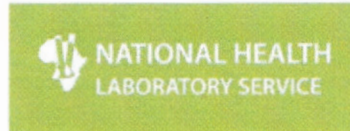
- (7) Every nomination form in respect of which any of the requirements as stipulated above has not been complied with, or which is not received by the aforesaid date and time at one of the addresses provided, will be invalid.



## DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH

NO. 1571

06 DECEMBER 2019



**CALL FOR NOMINATIONS FOR SUITABLE CANDIDATES TO SERVE AS MEMBERS ON THE BOARD OF THE NATIONAL HEALTH LABORATORY SERVICE IN TERMS OF THE NATIONAL HEALTH LABORATORY SERVICE ACT, 2000 (ACT NO. 37 OF 2000)**

The National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS) is established in terms of the National Health Laboratory Service Act, 2000 (Act No. 37 of 2000) (hereinafter referred to as "the Act") to provide quality, affordable and sustainable health laboratory and public health service.

The Honourable Minister of Health, Dr ZL Mkhize, hereby invites all interested persons to submit nominations of suitable candidates to be considered for appointment to serve as Board members of the NHLS in the categories listed below in terms of the Act, for a three (3) year term of office:

- One nominee to be appointed on account of his/her knowledge and experience in public health as Vice-Chairperson of the Board;
- One nominee to be appointed on account of his/her knowledge and experience in economics, financial matters or accounting;
- One nominee to be appointed on account of his/her knowledge and experience in legal matters; and
- One nominee to be appointed on account of his/her knowledge and experience in health research or epidemiology.

**Requirements of a valid nomination:** Written nominations must contain the full name and address of the individual making the nomination, the nominee's signed acceptance of the nomination and his/her detailed Curriculum Vitae, providing at least the following information: • Full name, ID number and gender • Contact address and telephone/mobile number, e-mail address • Qualifications and Experience • Certified copies of academic qualifications and identity document must be attached • a motivation letter stating the reasons for nomination.

**Disqualification:** A person may not be appointed as a member of the Board if that person – (a) is not a South African citizen and ordinarily resident in the Republic; (b) is an unrehabilitated insolvent; (c) has at any time been convicted of an offence involving dishonesty, whether in the Republic or elsewhere, and sentenced to imprisonment without the option of a fine; or (d) has been removed from an office of trust.

**Closing date for nominations:** Nominations must be addressed and submitted to the Director-General, Department of Health, Private Bag X828, Pretoria, 0001 or Cnr Thabo Sehume and Struben, Pretoria and marked for the attention of the Director: Public Entities Governance, no later than **16h00 on 13 December 2019**. Nominations may also be submitted via email at [Godfrey.Tsebe@health.gov.za](mailto:Godfrey.Tsebe@health.gov.za) Enquiries may be directed to: Ms M. Mushwana at 012 395 8753/8361 or Mr. G Tsebe at 012 395 9753.

Every nomination in respect of which any of the requirements as stipulated above has not been complied with, or which is not received by the aforesaid date and time at the address or e-mail given, will be invalid.

## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 1572

06 DECEMBER 2019

**EXTENSION OF THE APPLICATION OF THE PROVISIONS OF THE INTERIM PROTECTION OF INFORMAL LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1996 (ACT No. 31 of 1996)**

Whereas the application of the provisions of the Interim Protection of Informal Land Rights Act, 1996 (Act No. 31 of 1996), will expire on the 31 December 2019, I Thoko Didiza, Minister for Rural Development and Land Reform, under section 5(2) of the said Act, hereby extend the application of the provisions of the said Act for a further period of 12 months ending on 31 December 2020.

  
MS AT DIDIZA**MINISTER FOR AGRICULTURE, LAND REFORM AND RURAL DEVELOPMENT**

DEPARTEMENT VAN LANDELIKE ONTWIKKELING EN GRONDHERVORMING

NO. 1572

06 DECEMBER 2019

**VERLENGING VAN DIE TOEPASSING VAN DIE BEPALINGS VAN DIE WET OP DIE TUSSENTYDSE BESKERMING VAN INFORMELE GRONDREGTE, 1996 (WET No. 31 VAN 1996)**

Aangesien die toepassing van die bepalings van die wet op die Tussentydse Beskerming van Informele Groendregte, 1996 (Wet No. 31 van 1996), op 31 Desember 2019 sal verstryk, verleng ek, Thoko Didiza, Minister vir Landbou, Grondhervorming end Landelike Ontwikkeling, kragtens artikel 5(2) van genoemde Wet, Hierby die toepassing van die bepalings van genoemde Wet vir 'n verdere tydperk van 12 maande, eindigende op 31 Desember 2020.

  
MS AT DIDIZA (MP)**MINISTER VIR LANDBOU, GRONDHERVORMING END LANDELIKE ONTWIKKELING**

## SOUTH AFRICAN REVENUE SERVICE

NO. 1573

06 DECEMBER 2019

## INCOME TAX ACT, 1962

**AGREEMENT BETWEEN THE GOVERNMENT OF THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA AND THE GOVERNMENT OF THE COMMONWEALTH OF DOMINICA FOR THE EXCHANGE OF INFORMATION WITH RESPECT TO TAXES AND TAX MATTERS**

In terms of section 108(2) of the Income Tax Act, 1962 (Act No 58 of 1962), read in conjunction with section 231(4) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Act No 108 of 1996), it is hereby notified that the Agreement for the exchange of information with respect to taxes and tax matters set out in the Schedule to this Notice has been entered into with the Government of the Commonwealth of Dominica and has been approved by Parliament in terms of section 231(2) of the Constitution.

It is further notified in terms of paragraph 2 of Article 11 of the Agreement that the date of entry into force is 17<sup>th</sup> September 2015.

## **SCHEDULE**

### **AGREEMENT BETWEEN THE GOVERNMENT OF THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA AND THE GOVERNMENT OF THE COMMONWEALTH OF DOMINICA FOR THE EXCHANGE OF INFORMATION WITH RESPECT TO TAXES AND TAX MATTERS**

#### **PREAMBLE**

**WHEREAS** the Government of the Republic of South Africa and the Government of the Commonwealth of Dominica ("the Parties") recognise the need for co-operation and the exchange of information with respect to taxes and tax matters;

**WHEREAS** the Parties wish to enhance and facilitate the terms and conditions governing the exchange of information relating to taxes and tax matters;

**DESIRING THEREFORE** the Parties in concluding the following Agreement which contains obligations on the part of the Parties only;

**HAVE AGREED AS FOLLOWS:**

#### **ARTICLE 1**

##### **SCOPE OF THE AGREEMENT**

The Parties through their competent authorities shall provide assistance through exchange of information that is foreseeably relevant to the administration and enforcement of the domestic laws of the Parties concerning taxes and tax matters covered by this Agreement, including information that is foreseeably relevant to the determination, assessment, enforcement or collection of tax with respect to persons subject to such taxes, or to the investigation of tax matters or the prosecution of criminal tax matters in relation to such persons. Information shall be exchanged in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement and shall be treated as confidential in the manner provided in Article 8. The rights and safeguards secured to persons by the laws or administrative practice of the requested Party remain applicable. The requested Party shall use its best endeavours to ensure that the effective exchange of information is not unduly prevented or delayed.

#### **ARTICLE 2**

##### **JURISDICTION**

1. A requested Party is not obliged to provide information which is neither held by its authorities nor in the possession or control of persons who are within its territorial jurisdiction.

2. Information shall be provided in accordance with this Agreement by a requested Party without regard to the residence or the nationality of the person to whom the information relates, or by the residence or nationality of the person in control or possession of the information requested.



### ARTICLE 3

#### TAXES COVERED

1. The taxes which are the subject of this Agreement are taxes of every kind and description imposed by the Parties at the date of signature of the Agreement.
2. This Agreement shall apply also to any identical taxes imposed after the date of signature of the Agreement in addition to or in place of the existing taxes, or any substantially similar taxes if the Parties so agree. The competent authority of each Party shall notify the other of substantial changes to the taxation and information gathering measures which may affect the obligations of that Party pursuant to this Agreement.

### ARTICLE 4

#### GENERAL DEFINITIONS

1. In this Agreement:
  - (a) the term "Commonwealth of Dominica" means the island of Dominica, including the territorial waters thereof, the sea-bed, its subsoil and their natural resources, and any other area in the sea and in the air within which the Commonwealth of Dominica in accordance with international law exercises its sovereign rights;
  - (b) the term "South Africa" means the Republic of South Africa and, when used in a geographical sense, includes the territorial sea thereof as well as any area outside the territorial sea, including the continental shelf, which has been or may hereafter be designated, under the laws of South Africa and in accordance with international law, as an area within which South Africa may exercise sovereign rights of jurisdiction;
  - (c) the term "company" means any body corporate or any entity that is treated as a body corporate for tax purposes;
  - (d) the term "competent authority" means:
    - (i) in respect of the Commonwealth of Dominica, the Minister for Finance or an authorised representative of the Minister; and
    - (ii) in respect of South Africa, the Commissioner of the South African Revenue Service or an authorised representative of the Commissioner;
  - (e) the term "criminal laws" means all criminal laws designated as such under domestic law, irrespective of whether such are contained in the tax laws, the criminal code or other statutes;

- (f) the term "criminal tax matters" means tax matters involving intentional conduct whether before or after the entry into force of this Agreement which is liable to prosecution under the criminal laws of the requesting Party;
- (g) the term "information" means any fact, statement, document or record in whatever form;
- (h) the term "information gathering measures" means laws, regulations and administrative or judicial procedures enabling a requested Party to obtain and provide the information requested;
- (i) the term "person" includes a natural person, a legal person or any other body or group of persons;
- (j) the term "publicly traded company" means any company whose principal class of shares is listed on a recognised stock exchange provided its listed shares can be readily purchased or sold by the public. Shares can be purchased or sold "by the public" if the purchase or sale of shares is not implicitly or explicitly restricted to a limited group of investors;
- (k) the term "principal class of shares" means the class or classes of shares representing a majority of the voting power and value of the company;
- (l) the term "recognised stock exchange" means any stock exchange agreed upon by the competent authorities of the Parties;
- (m) the term "public collective investment scheme" means any collective investment scheme or fund, in which the purchase, sale or redemption of the units, shares or other interests is not implicitly or explicitly restricted to a limited group of investors;
- (n) the term "requested Party" means the Party to this Agreement which is requested to provide or has provided information in response to a request;
- (o) the term "requesting Party" means the Party to this Agreement submitting a request for or having received information from the requested Party; and
- (p) the term "tax" means any tax covered by this Agreement.

2. As regards the application of this Agreement at any time by a Party, any term not defined therein shall, unless the context otherwise requires, have the meaning that it has at that time under the laws of that Party, any meaning under the applicable tax laws of that Party prevailing over a meaning given to the term under other laws of that Party.

**ARTICLE 5****EXCHANGE OF INFORMATION UPON REQUEST**

1. The competent authority of the requested Party shall provide upon request in writing by the requesting Party information for the purposes referred to in Article 1. Such information shall be provided without regard to whether the requested Party needs such information for its own tax purposes or the conduct being investigated would constitute a crime under the laws of the requested Party if such conduct had occurred in the territory of the requested Party. The competent authority of the requesting Party shall only make a request for information pursuant to this Article when it is unable to obtain the requested information by other means, except where recourse to such means would give rise to disproportionate difficulty.

2. If the information in the possession of the competent authority of the requested Party is not sufficient to enable it to comply with the request for information, the requested Party shall, at its own discretion, use the information gathering measures it considers relevant to provide the requesting Party with the information requested, notwithstanding that the requested Party may not need such information for its own tax purposes.

3. If specifically requested by the competent authority of the requesting Party, the competent authority of the requested Party shall provide information under this Article, to the extent allowable under its domestic laws, in the form of depositions of witnesses and authenticated copies of original records.

4. Each Party shall ensure that it has the authority, subject to the terms of Article 1, to obtain and provide through its competent authority and upon request:

- (a) information held by banks, other financial institutions, and any person, including nominees and trustees, acting in an agency or fiduciary capacity;
- (b) (i) information regarding the legal and beneficial ownership of companies, partnerships, foundations and other persons, including in the case of collective investment schemes, information on shares, units and other interests;
- (ii) in the case of trusts, information on settlors, trustees, protectors, and beneficiaries.

5. This Agreement does not create an obligation for a Party to obtain or provide ownership information with respect to publicly traded companies or public collective investment schemes, unless such information can be obtained without giving rise to disproportionate difficulties.

6. Any request for information shall be formulated with the greatest detail possible in specifying in writing:

- (a) the identity of the person under examination or investigation;
- (b) the period for which the information is requested;

- (c) the nature of the information requested and the form in which the requesting Party would prefer to receive it;
- (d) the tax purpose for which the information is sought;
- (e) the reasons for believing that the information requested is foreseeably relevant to tax administration and enforcement of the requesting Party, with respect to the person identified in subparagraph (a) of this paragraph;
- (f) grounds for believing that the information requested is present in the territorial jurisdiction of the requested Party or is in the possession of or control of a person within the jurisdiction of the requested Party;
- (g) to the extent known, the name and address of any person believed to be in possession or control of the information requested;
- (h) a statement that the request is in conformity with the laws and administrative practices of the requesting Party, that if the requested information was within the jurisdiction of the requesting Party then the competent authority of the requesting Party would be able to obtain the information under the laws of the requesting Party or in the normal course of administrative practice and that it is in conformity with this Agreement;
- (i) a statement that the requesting Party has pursued all means available in its own territory to obtain the information, except where that would give rise to disproportionate difficulty.

7. The competent authority of the requested Party shall acknowledge in writing receipt of a request to the competent authority of the requesting Party and shall notify the competent authority of the requesting Party of any deficiencies in the request within 60 days of receipt of the request.

8. If the competent authority of the requested Party has been unable to obtain and provide the information requested within 90 days of receipt of the request, or if obstacles are encountered in furnishing the information, or if the competent authority of the requested Party refuses to provide the information, it shall immediately inform the competent authority of the requesting Party in writing, explaining the reasons for its inability to obtain and provide the information, or the obstacles encountered or the reasons for its refusal to provide the requested information.

**ARTICLE 6****TAX EXAMINATIONS ABROAD**

1. The requested Party may, to the extent permitted under its domestic laws, and following reasonable notice from the requesting Party, allow representatives of the competent authority of the requesting Party to enter the territory of the requested Party, to interview individuals and examine records with the prior written consent of the individuals or other persons concerned. The competent authority of the requesting Party shall notify the competent authority of the requested Party of the time and place of the intended meeting with the individuals concerned.

2. At the request of the competent authority of the requesting Party, the competent authority of the requested Party may permit representatives of the competent authority of the requesting Party to be present at the appropriate part of a tax examination in the territory of the requested Party.

3. If the request referred to in paragraph 2 is granted, the competent authority of the requested Party conducting the examination shall, as soon as possible, notify the competent authority of the requesting Party of the time and place of the examination, the authority or person authorised to carry out the examination and the procedures and conditions required by the requested Party for the conduct of the examination. All decisions with respect to the conduct of the examination shall be made by the requested Party conducting the examination in accordance with its domestic laws.

**ARTICLE 7****POSSIBILITY OF DECLINING A REQUEST**

1. The competent authority of the requested Party may decline a request for information:

- (a) where the request is not made in conformity with this Agreement;
- (b) where the requesting Party has not pursued all means available in its own territory to obtain the information, except where recourse to such means would give rise to disproportionate difficulty; or
- (c) where the disclosure of the information requested would be contrary to public policy of the requested Party.

2. This Agreement shall not impose upon a requested Party any obligation to provide information which would disclose any trade, business, industrial, commercial or professional secret or trade process, provided that information described in Article 5, paragraph 4, shall not be treated as such a secret or trade process merely because it meets the criteria in that paragraph.

3. This Agreement shall not impose on a requested Party the obligation to obtain or provide information which would reveal confidential communications between a client and an attorney, solicitor or other admitted legal representative where such communications are:

- (a) produced for the purposes of seeking or providing legal advice or
- (b) produced for the purposes of use in existing or contemplated legal proceedings.

4. A request for information shall not be refused on the ground that the tax claim giving rise to the request is disputed by the taxpayer under examination or investigation.

5. The requested Party shall not be required to obtain and provide information which, if the requested information was within the jurisdiction of the requesting Party, the competent authority of the requesting Party would not be able to obtain under its laws or in the normal course of administrative practice.

6. The requested Party may decline a request for information if the information is requested by the requesting Party to administer or enforce a provision of the tax law of the requesting Party, or any requirement connected therewith, which discriminates against a national or citizen of the requested Party as compared with a national or citizen of the requesting Party in the same circumstances.

## **ARTICLE 8**

### **CONFIDENTIALITY**

1. All information provided and received by the competent authorities of the Parties shall be kept confidential.

2. Such information shall be disclosed only to persons or authorities (including courts and administrative bodies) concerned with the purposes specified in Article 1, and used by such persons or authorities only for such purposes, including the determination of any appeal. For these purposes, information may be disclosed in public court proceedings or in judicial decisions.

3. Such information may not be used for any purpose other than for the purposes stated in Article 1 without the express written consent of the competent authority of the requested Party.

4. Information provided to a requesting Party under this Agreement may not be disclosed to any other person or entity or authority or any other jurisdiction without the express written consent of the competent authority of the requested Party.



**ARTICLE 9****COSTS**

Unless the competent authorities of the Parties otherwise agree, indirect costs incurred in providing assistance shall be borne by the requested Party, and direct costs incurred in providing assistance (including costs of engaging external advisors in connection with litigation or otherwise) shall be borne by the requesting Party. The respective competent authorities shall consult from time to time with regard to this Article, and in particular the competent authority of the requested Party shall consult with the competent authority of the requesting Party in advance if the costs of providing information with respect to a specific request are expected to be significant.

**ARTICLE 10****MUTUAL AGREEMENT PROCEDURE**

1. Where difficulties or doubts arise between the Parties regarding the implementation or interpretation of this Agreement, the respective competent authorities shall use their best efforts to resolve the matter by mutual agreement.
2. In addition to the agreements referred to in paragraph 1, the competent authorities of the Parties may mutually agree on the procedures to be used under Articles 5, 6 and 9.
3. The competent authorities of the Parties may communicate with each other directly for purposes of this Article.
4. The Parties may also agree to use other forms of dispute resolution should this become necessary.

**ARTICLE 11****ENTRY INTO FORCE**

1. Each of the Parties shall notify the other in writing through the diplomatic channel of the completion of all necessary formalities required by its law for the bringing into force of this Agreement.

2. This Agreement shall enter into force 30 days following the date of receipt of the later of these notifications. Upon the date of entry into force, it shall have effect:

- (a) for criminal tax matters on that date; and
- (b) for all other matters covered in Article 1 on that date, but only in respect of taxable periods beginning on or after that date or, where there is no taxable period, all charges to tax arising on or after that date.

**ARTICLE 12****AMENDMENT**

1. At the request of either Party, this Agreement may be amended based on mutual agreement and the Parties may communicate with each other directly for that purpose.

2. Amendments shall enter into force in accordance with Article 11.

**ARTICLE 13****TERMINATION**

1. This Agreement shall remain in force until terminated by either Party.

2. Either Party may terminate this Agreement by giving notice of termination in writing through the diplomatic channel. Such termination shall become effective on the first day of the month following the expiration of a period of three months after the date of receipt of notice of termination by the other Party. All requests received up to the effective date of termination will be dealt with in accordance with the terms of this Agreement.

3. Notwithstanding the termination, the Parties shall remain bound by the provisions of Article 8 with respect to any information obtained under this Agreement.

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF** the undersigned, being duly authorised by their respective Governments, have signed this Agreement on the 7th day of February 2012, in two originals, both texts being equally authentic.

**FOR THE GOVERNMENT OF THE  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA**

**FOR THE GOVERNMENT OF THE  
COMMONWEALTH OF DOMINICA**

**SUID-AFRIKAANSE INKOMSTEDIENS****NO. 1573****06 DESEMBER 2019****INKOMSTEBELASTINGWET, 1962****OOREENKOMS TUSSEN DIE REGERING VAN DIE REPUBLIEK VAN SUID-AFRIKA EN DIE REGERING VAN DIE GEMENEBS VAN DOMINICA VIR DIE UITRUIL VAN INLIGTING MET BETREKKING TOT BELASTINGS EN BELASTINGAANGELEENTHEDE**

Ingevolge artikel 108(2) van die Inkomstebelastingwet, 1962 (Wet No 58 van 1962), saamgelees met artikel 231(4) van die Grondwet van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika, 1996 (Wet No 108 van 1996), word hiermee kennis gegee dat die Ooreenkoms vir die uitruil van inligting met betrekking tot belasting en belastingaangeleenthede wat in die Bylae tot hierdie Kennisgewing vervat is, aangegaan is met die Regering van die Gemenebes van Dominica en deur die Parlement goedgekeur is ingevolge artikel 231(2) van die Grondwet.

Daar word verder bekendgemaak dat ingevolge paragraaf 2 van Artikel 11 van die Ooreenkoms die datum van inwerkingtreding 17<sup>de</sup> September 2015 is.

**BYLAE****OOREENKOMS TUSSEN DIE REGERING VAN DIE REPUBLIEK VAN SUID-AFRIKA EN DIE REGERING VAN DIE GEMENEBS VAN DOMINICA VIR DIE UITRUIL VAN INLIGTING MET BETREKKING TOT BELASTINGS EN BELASTINGAANGELEENTHEDE****AANHEF**

**AANGESIEN** die Regering van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika en die Regering van die Gemenebes van Dominica ("die Partye") die behoefte erken aan samewerking en die uitruil van inligting met betrekking tot belastinge en belastingaangeleenthede;

**AANGESIEN** die Partye die bepalinge en voorwaardes wil verstewig en bevorder wat die uitruil van inligting met betrekking tot belastinge en belastingaangeleenthede reël;

**HET DIE PARTYE, WAT BEGERIG IS** om die volgende Ooreenkoms aan te gaan wat sekere verpligtinge vir slegs die Partye bevat,

**DUS SOOS VOLG OOREENGEKOM:****ARTIKEL 1****BESTEK VAN OOREENKOMS**

Die Partye, deur hulle bevoegde owerhede, verleen bystand deur die uitruil van inligting wat voorsienbaar tersaaklik is vir die administrasie en afdwinging van die landsreg van die Partye rakende die belastinge en belastingaangeleenthede wat deur hierdie Ooreenkoms gedek word, ook inligting wat voorsienbaar tersaaklik is vir die vasstelling, aanslaan, afdwinging of invordering van belasting ten opsigte van persone wat aan sodanige belastinge onderhewig is, of by die ondersoek van belastingaangeleenthede of die vervolging van strafregtelike belastingaangeleenthede met betrekking tot sodanige persone. Inligting word uitgeruil ooreenkomstig die bepalinge van hierdie Ooreenkoms en vertroulik gehou op die wyse wat Artikel 8 bepaal. Die regte en beskerming wat deur die wette of administratiewe praktyk van die versoekte Party aan persone verleen word, bly van toepassing. Die versoekte Party moet alles in sy vermoë doen om te verseker dat die doeltreffende uitruil van inligting nie ten onregte voorkom of vertraag word nie.

**ARTIKEL 2****JURISDIKSIE**

1. 'n Versoekte Party is nie verplig om inligting te verskaf wat nóg deur sy owerhede gehou word, nóg deur persone wat binne sy gebiedsjurisdiksie is besit of beheer word nie.
2. Inligting word ooreenkomstig hierdie Ooreenkoms deur 'n versoekte Party verskaf sonder inagneming van die woonplek of die nasionaliteit van die persoon op wie die inligting betrekking het of die woonplek of nasionaliteit van die persoon wat die aangevraagde inligting beheer of besit.

**ARTIKEL 3****BELASTINGS GEDEK**

1. Die belastinge wat die onderwerp van hierdie Ooreenkoms is, is belastinge van elke soort en beskrywing wat teen die datum van ondertekening van die Ooreenkoms deur die Party opgelê is.
2. Hierdie Ooreenkoms is ook van toepassing op enige identiese belastinge wat ná die datum van ondertekening van die Ooreenkoms bykomend tot of in die plek van bestaande belastinge opgelê word of, indien die Partye daartoe instem, enige wesenslik soortgelyke belastinge. Elk van die bevoegde owerhede van die Partye moet die ander kennis gee van wesenslike veranderinge aan die belasting en inligtingversamelmaatreëls wat die verpligtinge van daardie ander Party ingevolge hierdie Ooreenkoms kan raak.

**ARTIKEL 4****ALGEMENE WOORDOMSKRYWING**

1. In hierdie Ooreenkoms:
  - (a) beteken die uitdrukking "Gemenebes van Dominica" die eiland van Dominica, ook die territoriale waters daarvan, die seebodem, sy ondergrond en hulle natuurlike hulpbronne, en enige ander gebied in die see en in die lug waarbinne die Gemenebes van Dominica ooreenkomstig die volkereg sy soewereine regte uitoefen;
  - (b) beteken die uitdrukking "Suid-Afrika" die Republiek van Suid-Afrika en, wanneer dit in 'n geografiese verband gebruik word, ook die territoriale waters daarvan asook enige gebied buite die territoriale waters, met inbegrip van die kontinentale plat, wat ingevolge die reg van Suid-Afrika en ooreenkomstig die volkereg aangedui is of hierna aangedui word as 'n gebied waarbinne Suid-Afrika soewereine regte van jurisdiksie kan uitoefen;
  - (c) beteken die uitdrukking "maatskappy" enige regspersoon of enige entiteit wat vir belastingdoeleindes as 'n regspersoon behandel word;



- (d) beteken die uitdrukking "bevoegde owerheid":
  - (i) ten opsigte van die Gemenebes van Dominica, die Minister van Finansies of 'n gemagtigde verteenwoordiger van die Minister; en
  - (ii) ten opsigte van Suid-Afrika, die Kommissaris van die Suid-Afrikaanse Inkomstediens of 'n gemagtigde verteenwoordiger van die Kommissaris;
- (e) beteken die uitdrukking "strafreg" alle strafregbepalings as sodanig aangedui ingevolge die landsreg, ongeag of sodanige bepalinge in die belastingreg, die strafregkode of ander statute vervat is;
- (f) beteken die uitdrukking "strafregaangeleenthede" belastingaangeleenthede wat opsetlike gedrag behels, hetsy voor of na die inwerkingtreding van hierdie Ooreenkoms, wat ingevolge die strafreg van die versoekende Party aan vervolging onderhewig is;
- (g) beteken die uitdrukking "inligting" enige feit, verklaring, dokument of rekord in watter vorm ook al;
- (h) beteken die uitdrukking "inligtingversamelmaatreëls" wette, regulasies en administratiewe of geregtelike prosedures wat 'n versoekte Party in staat stel om die aangevraagde inligting te verkry en te verskaf;
- (i) beteken die uitdrukking "persoon" 'n natuurlike persoon, 'n regspersoon of enige ander liggaam of groep persone;
- (j) beteken die uitdrukking "openbaar verhandelde maatskappy" enige maatskappy waarvan die hoofklas van aandele op 'n erkende aandelebeurs genoteer is, mits sy genoteerde aandele geredelik deur die publiek gekoop of verkoop kan word. Aandele kan "deur die publiek" gekoop of verkoop word indien die koop of verkoop van aandele nie implisiet of eksplisiet tot 'n beperkte groep beleggers beperk word nie;
- (k) beteken die uitdrukking "hoofklas van aandele" die klas of klasse van aandele wat 'n meerderheid van die stemkrag en waarde van die maatskappy verteenwoordig;
- (l) beteken die uitdrukking "erkende aandelebeurs" enige aandelebeurs waartoe die bevoegde owerhede van die Party ooreengekom het;
- (m) beteken die uitdrukking "openbare kollektiewe beleggingskema" enige kollektiewe beleggingsfonds of -skema waarin die koop, verkoop of aflossing van die eenhede, aandele of ander belange nie implisiet of eksplisiet tot 'n beperkte groep beleggers beperk word nie;
- (n) beteken die uitdrukking "versoekte Party" die Party by hierdie Ooreenkoms wat versoek word om inligting te verskaf of wat inligting verskaf het in antwoord op 'n versoek;
- (o) beteken die uitdrukking "versoekende Party" die Party by hierdie Ooreenkoms wat 'n versoek voorlê vir inligting of wat inligting van die versoekte Party ontvang het; en

- (p) beteken die uitdrukking "belasting" enige belasting wat deur hierdie Ooreenkoms gedek word.

2. Betreffende die toepassing van hierdie Ooreenkoms te eniger tyd deur 'n Party, het 'n uitdrukking wat nie daarin omskryf is nie, tensy dit uit die samehang anders blyk, die betekenis wat dit op daardie tydstip ingevolge die reg van daardie Party het, en geniet enige betekenis ingevolge die toepaslike belastingreg van daardie Party voorrang bo 'n betekenis wat ingevolge ander wette van daardie Party aan die uitdrukking geheg word.

## ARTIKEL 5

### UITRUIL VAN INLIGTING OP VERSOEK

1. Die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekte Party moet op skriftelike versoek van die versoekende Party inligting verskaf vir die doeleindes in Artikel 1 genoem. Sodanige inligting word verskaf sonder om in ag te neem of die versoekte Party sodanige inligting vir sy eie belastingdoeleindes nodig het en of die gedrag wat ondersoek word ingevolge die reg van die versoekte Party 'n misdryf sou uitmaak indien dit in die gebied van die versoekte Party plaasgevind het. Die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekende Party moet 'n versoek om inligting ingevolge hierdie Artikel slegs rig wanneer hy nie in staat is om die aangevraagde inligting volgens ander metodes te bekom nie, behalwe waar toevlug tot sodanige metodes tot buitensporige probleme aanleiding sou gee.

2. Indien die inligting in besit van die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekte Party nie voldoende is om hom in staat te stel om aan die versoek om inligting te voldoen nie, gebruik die versoekte Party na eie goeddunke die inligtingversamelmaatreëls wat hy as toepaslik beskou om die aangevraagde inligting aan die versoekende Party te verskaf, al het die versoekte Party sodanige inligting nie vir sy eie belastingdoeleindes nodig nie.

3. Indien spesifiek deur die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekende Party daartoe versoek, moet die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekte Party ingevolge hierdie Artikel, in die mate waarin dit ingevolge sy landsreg toelaatbaar is, inligting verskaf in die vorm van verklarings van getuies en gewaarmerkte afskrifte van oorspronklike rekords.

4. Elke Party moet seker maak dat hy, behoudens die bepalinge van Artikel 1, die bevoegdheid het om, deur sy bevoegde owerheid en op versoek:

- (a) inligting te verkry en te verskaf wat gehou word deur banke, ander finansiële instellings en enige persoon, ook benoemdes en trustees, wat in 'n volmag- of vertrouenshoedanigheid optree;
- (b)
  - (i) inligting te verkry en te verskaf betreffende die regs- en voordelige eienaarskap van maatskappye, vennootskappe, stigtings en ander persone, ook, in die geval van kollektiewe beleggingskemas, inligting oor aandele, eenhede en ander belange;
  - (ii) in die geval van trusts, inligting te verkry en te verskaf oor trustoprigters, trustees, trustbeskermers en begunstigdes.

5. Hierdie Ooreenkoms skep nie 'n verpligting vir 'n Party om inligting oor eienaarskap met betrekking tot openbaar verhandelde maatskappye of openbare kollektiewe beleggingskemas te verkry of te verskaf nie, tensy sodanige inligting bekom kan word sonder om tot buitensporige probleme aanleiding te gee.

6. 'n Versoek om inligting moet so breedvoerig as moontlik geformuleer word deur die volgende skriftelik uiteen te sit:

- (a) die identiteit van die persoon wie se sake nagegaan of wat ondersoek word;
- (b) die tydperk waarvoor die inligting versoek word;
- (c) die aard van die inligting wat aangevra word en die vorm waarin die versoekende Party verkies om dit te ontvang;
- (d) die belastingdoel waarvoor die inligting verlang word;
- (e) die redes waarom vermoed word dat die aangevraagde inligting voorsienbaar tersaaklik is vir belastingadministrasie en -afdwinging deur die versoekende Party ten opsigte van die persoon wat in subparagraaf (a) van hierdie paragraaf geïdentifiseer word;
- (f) gronde waarom vermoed word dat die aangevraagde inligting aanwesig is in die gebiedsjurisdiksie van die versoekte Party of besit of beheer word deur 'n persoon binne die jurisdiksie van die versoekte Party;
- (g) in soverre dit bekend is, die naam en adres van 'n persoon wat die aangevraagde inligting vermoedelik besit of beheer;
- (h) 'n verklaring dat die versoek in ooreenstemming is met die reg en administratiewe praktyke van die versoekende Party, dat indien die aangevraagde inligting binne die jurisdiksie van die versoekende Party was, die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekende Party in staat sou wees om die inligting te verkry ingevolge die reg van die versoekende Party of in die gewone loop van administratiewe praktyk en dat die versoek in ooreenstemming is met hierdie Ooreenkoms;
- (i) 'n verklaring dat die versoekende Party alle metodes in sy eie gebied tot sy beskikking nagevolg het om die inligting te verkry, uitgesonderd waar dit tot buitensporige probleme aanleiding sou gee.

7. Die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekte Party moet aan die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekende Party skriftelik ontvangs erken van 'n versoek, en moet die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekende Party binne 60 dae van ontvangs van die versoek van enige tekortkominge in die versoek in kennis stel.

8. Indien die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekte Party nie in staat is om die aangevraagde inligting binne 90 dae van ontvangs van die versoek te bekom en te verskaf nie, of indien hindernisse teëgekom word in die verskaffing van die inligting, of indien die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekte Party weier om die inligting te verskaf, moet hy die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekende Party onmiddellik skriftelik daarvan verwittig en die redes vir sy onvermoë om die inligting te bekom en te verskaf, of die hindernisse wat teëgekom is, of die redes vir sy weiering om die aangevraagde inligting te verskaf, verduidelik.

## **ARTIKEL 6**

### **BELASTINGONDERSOEKE IN DIE BUITELAND**

1. Die versoekte Party kan, in soverre dit ingevolge sy landsreg veroorloof is en na redelike kennisgewing deur die versoekende Party, verteenwoordigers van die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekende Party toelaat om die gebied van die versoekte Party binne te gaan om met individue onderhoude te voer en rekords na te gaan, met die vooraf skriftelike instemming van die individue of ander betrokke persone. Die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekende Party moet die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekte Party in kennis stel van die tyd en plek van die beoogde vergadering met die betrokke individue.

2. Die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekte Party kan, op versoek van die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekende Party, verteenwoordigers van die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekende Party toelaat om aanwesig te wees by die toepaslike deel van 'n belastingondersoek in die gebied van die versoekte Party.

3. Indien die versoek in paragraaf 2 bedoel toegestaan word, moet die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekte Party wat die ondersoek uitvoer, die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekende Party so gou moontlik in kennis stel van die tyd en plek van die ondersoek, die owerheid of persoon wat gemagtig is om die ondersoek uit te voer, en die prosedures en voorwaardes wat deur die versoekte Party voorgeskryf word vir die uitvoer van die ondersoek. Alle besluite rakende die uitvoering van die ondersoek word geneem deur die versoekte Party wat die ondersoek ooreenkomstig sy landsreg uitvoer.

## **ARTIKEL 7**

### **MOONTLIKHEID VAN WEIERING VAN 'N VERSOEK**

1. Die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekte Party kan 'n versoek om inligting weier:-
  - (a) wanneer die versoek nie ooreenkomstig hierdie Ooreenkoms gerig is nie;
  - (b) wanneer die versoekende Party nie al die metodes in sy eie gebied tot sy beskikking nagevolg het om die inligting te verkry nie, uitgesonderd waar toevlug tot sodanige metodes tot buitensporige probleme aanleiding sou gee; of
  - (c) waar die openbaarmaking van die aangevraagde inligting strydig sou wees met die openbare beleid van die versoekte Party.

2. Hierdie Ooreenkoms lê nie 'n verpligting op 'n versoekte Party om inligting te verskaf wat 'n handels-, sake-, nywerheids-, kommersiële of beroepsgeheim of handelsproses openbaar sou maak nie, met dien verstande dat die inligting wat in Artikel 5, paragraaf 4, beskryf word nie as so 'n geheim of handelsproses gehanteer word bloot omdat dit aan die kriteria in daardie paragraaf voldoen nie.

3. Hierdie Ooreenkoms lê nie 'n verpligting op 'n versoekte Party om inligting te bekom en te verskaf wat vertroulike mededelings tussen 'n kliënt en 'n advokaat, prokureur of ander toegelate regsverteenwoordiger openbaar sou maak nie, waar sodanige mededelings: -

- (a) geskep word vir die doeleindes van die verkryging of verskaffing van regsadvies of
- (b) geskep word vir die doeleindes van gebruik in bestaande of beoogde regsverrigtinge.

4. 'n Versoek om inligting moet nie geweier word op grond daarvan dat die belastingeis wat tot die versoek aanleiding gegee het, deur die belastingbetaler betwis word wie se sake nagegaan of wat ondersoek word nie.

5. Daar word nie van die versoekte Party vereis om inligting te verkry en te verskaf wat, indien die verlangde inligting binne die jurisdiksie van die versoekende Party sou wees, die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekende Party nie ingevolge sy reg of in die gewone loop van administratiewe praktyk sou kon verkry nie.

6. Die versoekte Party kan 'n versoek om inligting weier indien die inligting deur die versoekende Party versoek word om 'n bepaling van die belastingreg van die versoekende Party, of enige vereiste wat daarmee verband hou, toe te pas of af te dwing wat diskrimineer teen 'n burger of onderdaan van die versoekte Party vergeleke met 'n burger of onderdaan van die versoekende Party in dieselfde omstandighede.

## ARTIKEL 8

### VERTROULIKHEID

1. Alle inligting wat deur die bevoegde owerhede van die Partye verskaf en ontvang word, moet vertroulik gehou word.

2. Sodanige inligting word slegs openbaar gemaak aan persone of owerhede (ook howe en administratiewe liggame) wat gemoeid is met die doeleindes in Artikel 1 vermeld, en word deur sodanige persone of owerhede gebruik vir slegs sodanige doeleindes, insluitende die beslissing van enige appèl. Inligting kan vir hierdie doeleindes by openbare hofverrigtinge of in regterlike beslissings openbaar gemaak word.

3. Sodanige inligting mag nie sonder die uitdruklike skriftelike toestemming van die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekte Party vir enige ander doel as die doeleindes in Artikel 1 vermeld, gebruik word nie.

4. Inligting wat ingevolge hierdie Ooreenkoms aan 'n versoekende Party verskaf word, mag nie sonder die uitdruklike skriftelike toestemming van die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekte Party aan enige ander persoon of entiteit of owerheid of enige ander jurisdiksie openbaar gemaak word nie.

## **ARTIKEL 9**

### **KOSTE**

Tensy die bevoegde owerhede van die Partye anders ooreenkom, word die onregstreekse koste wat by die verskaffing van bystand aangegaan word, deur die versoekte Party gedra, en word die regstreekse koste wat by die verskaffing van bystand aangegaan word (ook die koste van die aanstelling van eksterne raadgewers in verband met litigasie of andersins), deur die versoekende Party gedra. Die onderskeie bevoegde owerhede moet van tyd tot tyd oorleg pleeg met betrekking tot hierdie Artikel, en in die besonder moet die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekte Party vooraf met die bevoegde owerheid van die versoekende Party oorleg pleeg indien die koste van die verskaffing van inligting met betrekking tot 'n spesifieke versoek na verwagting beduidend sal wees.

## **ARTIKEL 10**

### **PROSEDURE VIR ONDERLINGE OOREENKOMS**

1. Waar probleme of twyfel tussen die Partye ontstaan betreffende die uitvoering of vertolking van hierdie Ooreenkoms, moet die onderskeie bevoegde owerhede alles in die werk stel om die aangeleentheid deur onderlinge ooreenkoms te besleg.

2. Bykomend tot die ooreenkomste in paragraaf 1 bedoel, kan die bevoegde owerhede van die Partye onderling ooreenkom oor die prosedures wat ingevolge Artikel 5, 6 en 9 gebruik moet word.

3. Die bevoegde owerhede van die Partye kan regstreeks met mekaar kommunikeer vir die doeleindes van hierdie Artikel.

4. Die Partye kan ook ooreenkom om ander vorme van geskilbeslegting te gebruik sou dit nodig word.



**ARTIKEL 11****INWERKINGTREDING**

1. Elk van die Partye moet die ander langs die diplomatieke kanaal skriftelik kennis gee van die afhandeling van alle nodige formaliteite wat ingevolge sy reg vir die inwerkingtreding van hierdie Ooreenkoms vereis word.
2. Hierdie Ooreenkoms tree in werking 30 dae na die datum van ontvangs van die laaste van hierdie kennisgewings. Op die datum van inwerkingtreding is dit van toepassing:
  - (a) op strafregtelike belastingaangeleenthede op daardie datum; en
  - (b) op alle ander aangeleenthede wat op daardie datum in Artikel 1 gedek word, maar slegs ten opsigte van belasbare tydperke wat op of na daardie datum begin of, waar daar geen belasbare tydperk is nie, alle heffings op belasting wat op of na daardie datum ontstaan.

**ARTIKEL 12****WYSIGING**

1. Hierdie Ooreenkoms kan op versoek van die een of die ander Party gewysig word, gegrond op onderlinge ooreenkoms, en die Partye kan vir die doel regstreeks met mekaar kommunikeer.
2. Wysigings tree in werking ooreenkomstig Artikel 11.

**ARTIKEL 13****BEËINDIGING**

1. Hierdie Ooreenkoms bly van krag totdat dit deur een van die twee Partye beëindig word.
2. 'n Party kan hierdie Ooreenkoms beëindig deur skriftelik kennis van beëindiging langs die diplomatieke kanaal te gee. Sodanige beëindiging word van krag op die eerste dag van die maand wat volg op die verstryking van 'n tydperk van drie maande na die datum van ontvangs van kennis van beëindiging deur die ander Party. Alle versoeke wat tot die effektiewe datum van beëindiging ontvang word, word mee gehandel ooreenkomstig die bepalings van hierdie Ooreenkoms.

3. Ondanks die beëindiging bly die Partye gebind deur die bepalings van Artikel 8 ten opsigte van enige inligting wat ingevolge hierdie Ooreenkoms verkry is.

**TEN BEWYSE WAARVAN** die ondergetekendes, behoorlik daartoe gemagtig deur hulle onderskeie Regerings, hierdie Ooreenkoms in twee oorspronklike eksemplare, waarvan beide tekste ewe outentiek is, op die 7<sup>de</sup> dag van Februarie 2012 onderteken het.

**IR DIE REGERING VAN DIE  
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID-AFRIKA**

**VIR DIE REGERING VAN DIE  
GEMENEBES VAN DOMINICA**

## DEPARTMENT OF TRADE AND INDUSTRY

NO. 1574

06 DECEMBER 2019

**CO-OPERATIVES THAT HAVE BEEN REMOVED FROM THE REGISTER**

1. OUTDOOR CLEANING CO-OP LTD
2. UMCEBO WESIZWE CO-OP LTD
3. UNGIBUKANI CO-OP LTD
4. LANGKLOOF EMERGING FARMERS CO-OP LTD
5. SIFISO ESIHLE CO-OP LTD
6. ONE TIME AGRICULTURAL CO-OP LTD
7. UTHANDIWE CO-OP LTD
8. TSHWARAGANO BAKKERY CO-OP LTD
9. TOM TOM ROAD CO-OP LTD
10. WALK-IN-25 ZOLA PRIMARY CO-OP LTD
11. NGUBEVU TRADING CO-OP LTD
12. NZIMA AGRICULTURAL CO-OP LTD
13. NSUNSUMETO ART AND CRAFTERS CO-OP LTD
14. NGADUMBILI CO-OP LTD
15. ZAMUKHANYA ILANGA CO-OP LTD
16. CHAPOLA AGRICULTURAL CO-OP LTD
17. SAKHUMZI TRACTOR OWNERS AGRICULTURAL CO-OP LTD
18. TOURS AGRICULTURAL CO-OP LTD
19. SIZANEKISO CO-OP LTD
20. PONO FARMING CO-OP LTD
21. NSONSOBELA CO-OP LTD
22. MARANG A LETSATSI CO-OP LTD
23. LIFE BLOOD CO-OP LTD
24. KADEBONA CO-OP LTD
25. DINALEDI COMMERCIAL CO-OP LTD
26. ROGIGANA AGRICULTURAL CO-OP LTD
27. ITEKENG BALENI AGRICULTURAL CO-OP LTD
28. VUKA SIZWE CULTURAL VILLAGE CO-OP LTD
29. BHEKOKWETHU CO-OP LTD
30. T. K. COR MANUFACTURERS CO-OP LTD
31. VUTHWINGQONDO CO-OP LTD
32. RAGANI BOMMA FARMERS CO-OP LTD
33. SUMMER SUN MAYATSENG ONE CO-OP LTD

Notice is hereby given that the names of the abovementioned co-operatives have been removed from the register in terms of the provisions of section 73(1) of the Co-operatives Act, 2005 as amended.

**REGISTRAR OF CO-OPERATIVES**

Office of the Registrar of Co-operatives  
Dti Campus  
77 Meintjies Street

**Pretoria**

0002

Private Bag X237

**Pretoria**

0001

## DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORT

NO. 1575

06 DECEMBER 2019

**NOTICE OF INTENTION TO INTRODUCE THE ECONOMIC REGULATION OF  
TRANSPORT BILL, 2019 INTO PARLIAMENT IN TERMS OF RULE 241(1) (b) OF  
THE NATIONAL ASSEMBLY**

The Minister of Transport hereby in terms of National Assembly Rule No. 241(1) (b) intends introducing the Economic Regulation of Transport Bill, 2019 ("the Bill") in Parliament during 2020.

The Bill and its Explanatory Memorandum were published for comments in the Government Gazette No. 41437, Notice Number 632 of 12 February 2018, and further published on Government Gazette 41992, Notice 1135 of 24 October 2018.

The object of the Bill is as follows:-

**To consolidate the economic regulation of transport within a single framework and policy, to establish the Transport Economic Regulator, to establish the Transport Economic Council, to make consequential amendments to various other Acts, and to provide for related incidental matters.**

Copies of the Bill and the Memorandum on the Objects can be obtained from the Office of the Government Printers on (012) 334 4500/ 334 4741 alternatively from the Department of Transport.

---

**GENERAL NOTICES • ALGEMENE KENNISGEWINGS**

---

**DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES****NOTICE 635 OF 2019****NATIONAL FORESTS ACT, 1998****(ACT NO. 84 OF 1998)****A LIST OF ALL PROTECTED TREE SPECIES UNDER SECTION 12 OF THE NATIONAL  
FORESTS ACT, 1998 (ACT NO. 84 OF 1998)**

I, Barbara Dallas Creecy, Minister of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries hereby under section 15(3) of the National Forests Act, 1998 (Act No. 84 of 1998) publish a list of all protected tree species belonging to a particular species protected under section 12(1) (d), in the Schedule hereto.

The effect of the declaration of protected trees is that, in terms of section 15(1) of the National Forests Act, 1998 (Act No. 84 of 1998), no person may cut, disturb, damage destroy or remove any protected tree; or collect, remove, transport, export, purchase, sell, donate or in any other manner acquire or dispose of any protected tree, except under a license granted by the Minister; on in terms of the exemption from the provisions of this subsection published by the Minister in the *Gazette* on the advice of Council.

In terms of section 62(2) (c) of the National Forests Act, 1998 ( Act No. 84 of 1998), any person who contravenes the prohibition on (i) the cutting, disturbance, damage, destruction or removal of protected trees referred to in section 15(1)(a); or (ii) the prohibition on the collection, removal, transport, export, purchase or sale of protected trees referred to in section 15(1)(b), is guilty of a first category offence. In terms of section 58(1), a person who is guilty of a first category offence referred to in section 62 and 63 may be sentenced to a fine or imprisonment for a period of up to three years, or to a fine and such imprisonment.

**MS B D CREECY**  
**MINISTER OF ENVIRONMENT, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES**

**CONTINUES ON PAGE 130 - PART 2**





# Government Gazette Staatskoerant

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA  
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID AFRIKA

Vol. 654

6 December 2019  
Desember

No. 42887

**PART 2 OF 2**

N.B. The Government Printing Works will not be held responsible for the quality of "Hard Copies" or "Electronic Files" submitted for publication purposes

ISSN 1682-5843



**AIDS HELPLINE: 0800-0123-22 Prevention is the cure**

## SCHEDULE A

Botanical name	English common names	Other common names  Afrikaans (A), Sepedi (P), Sesotho (S), Setswana (T), Tshivenda (V), isiXhosa (X), isiZulu (Z), Xitsonga (XT)	National tree number
<i>Acacia erioloba</i>	Camel thorn	Kameeldoring (A)/Mogohlo (NS)/Mogôthô (T)/	168
<i>Acacia haematoxylon</i>	Grey camel thorn	Vaalkameeldoring (A)/Mokholo (T)	169
<i>Adansonia digitata</i>	Baobab	Kremetart (A)/Seboi (NS)/Mowana (T)/Ximuwu (XT)	467
<i>Azelia quanzensis</i>	Pod mahogany	Peulmahonie (A)/Mutokota (V)/Inkehli (Z)	207
<i>Balanites</i> subsp. <i>maughamii</i>	Torchwood	Groendoring (A)/Ugobandlovu (Z)	251
<i>Barringtonia racemosa</i>	Powder-puff tree	Poeierkwasboom (A)/Iboqo (Z)	524
<i>Boscia albitrunca</i>	Shepherd's tree	Witgat (A)/Mohlôpi (NS)/Motlhôpi (T)/ Muvhombwe (V)/Umgqomogqomo (X)/Umvithi (Z)	122
<i>Brachystegia spiciformis</i>	Msasa	Msasa (A)	198.1
<i>Breonadia salicina</i>	Matumi	Mingerhout (A)/Mohlomê (NS)/Mutulume (V)/Umfomfo (Z)	684
<i>Bruguiera gymnorhiza</i>	Black mangrove	Swartwortelboom (A)/isiKhangati (X)/IsiHlobane (Z)	527
<i>Cassipourea swaziensis</i>	Swazi onionwood	Swazi-uehout (A)	531.1
<i>Catha edulis</i>	Bushman's tea	Boesmanstee (A)/Mohlatse (NS)/Igqwaka (X)/Umhlwazi (Z)	404
<i>Ceriops tagal</i>	Indian mangrove	Indiese wortelboom (A)/isinkaha (Z)	525
<i>Cleistanthus schlechteri</i> var. <i>schlechteri</i>	False tamboti	Bastertambotie (A)/Umzithi (Z)	320
<i>Colubrina nicholsonii</i>	Pondo weeping thorn	Pondo-treurdoring (A)	453.8
<i>Combretum imberbe</i>	Leadwood	Hardekool (A)/Mohwelere-tšhipi (NS)/Motswiri (T)/Impondondlovu (Z)	539
<i>Curtisia dentata</i>	Assegai	Assegai (A)/Umgxina (X)/Umagunda (Z)	570
<i>Elaeodendron transvaalensis</i>	Bushveld saffron	Bosveld-saffraan (A)/Monomane (T)/Ingwavuma (Z)	416
<i>Erythrophysa</i>	Bushveld red	Bosveld-rooiklapperbos	436.2

<i>transvaalensis</i>	balloon	(A)/Mofalatsane (T)	
<i>Euclea pseudebenus</i>	Ebony guarri	Ebbeboom-ghwarrie (A)	598
<i>Ficus trichopoda</i>	Swamp fig	Moerasvy (A)/Umvubu (Z)	54
<i>Leucadendron argenteum</i>	Silver tree	Silwerboom (A)	77
<i>Lumnitzera racemosa</i> var. <i>racemosa</i>	Tonga mangrove	Tonga-wortelboom (A)/isiKhaha-esibomvu (Z)	552
<i>Lydenburgia abbottii</i>	Pondo bushman's tea	Pondo-boesmanstee (A)	407
<i>Lydenburgia cassinoides</i>	Sekhukhuni bushman's tea	Sekhukhuni-boesmanstee (A)	406
<i>Mimusops caffra</i>	Coastal red milkwood	Kusrooimelkhout (A)/Umthunzi (X)/Umkhakhayi (Z)	583
<i>Newtonia hildebrandtii</i> var. <i>hildebrandtii</i>	Lebombo wattle	Lebombo-wattel (A)/Umfomothi (Z)	191
<i>Ocotea bullata</i>	Stinkwood	Stinkhout (A)/Umhlungulu (X)/Umnukane (Z)	118
<i>Ozoroa namaquensis</i>	Gariiep resin tree	Gariiep-harpisboom (A)	373.2
<i>Philenoptera violacea</i>	Apple-leaf	Appelblaar (A)/Mphata (NS)/Mohata (T)/isiHomohomo (Z)	238
<i>Pittosporum viridiflorum</i>	Cheesewood	Kasuur (A)/Kgalagangwe (NS)/Umkhwenkwe (X)/Umfusamvu (Z)	139
<i>Podocarpus elongatus</i>	Breede River yellowwood	Breërviergeelhout (A)	15
<i>Podocarpus falcatus</i> ( <i>Afrocarpus falcatus</i> )	Outeniqua yellowwood	Outniekwageelhout (A)/Mogôbagôba (NS)/Umkhoba (X)/Umsonti (Z)	16
<i>Podocarpus henkelii</i>	Henkel's yellowwood	Henkel se geelhout (A)/Umsonti (X)/Umsonti (Z)	17
<i>Podocarpus latifolius</i>	Real yellowwood	Regte-geelhout (A)/Mogôbagôba (NS)/Umcheya (X)/Umkhoba (Z)	18
<i>Protea comptonii</i>	Saddleback sugarbush	Barberton-suikerbos (A)	88
<i>Protea curvata</i>	Serpentine sugarbush	Serpentynsuikerbos (A)	88.1
<i>Prunus africana</i>	Red stinkwood	Rooistinkhout (A)/Umkhakhase (X)/Umdumezulu (Z)	147
<i>Pterocarpus angolensis</i>	Wild teak	Kiaat (A)/Morôtô (NS)/Mokwa (T)/Mutondo (V)/Umvangazi (Z)	236
<i>Rhizophora mucronata</i>	Red mangrove	Rooiwortelboom (A)/isiKhangathi (X)/Umhlume (Z)	526
<i>Sclerocarya birrea</i> subsp. <i>caffra</i>	Marula	Maroela (A)/Morula (NS)/Morula (T)/Umganu (Z) /Nkanyi (XT)	360
<i>Securidaca longepedunculata</i>	Violet tree	Krinkhout (A)/Mmaba (T)	303

<i>Sideroxylon inerme</i> subsp. <i>inerme</i>	White milkwood	Witmelkhout (A)/Ximafana (X)/Umakhwelafingqane (Z)	579
<i>Tephrosia pondoensis</i>	Pondo poison pea	Pondo-gifertjie (A)	226.1
<i>Warburgia salutaris</i>	Pepper-bark tree	Peperbasboom (A)/Molaka (NS)/Mulanga (V)/isiBaha (Z)	488
<i>Widdringtonia</i> <i>cedarbergensis</i>	Clanwilliam cedar	Clanwilliamseder (A)	19
<i>Widdringtonia</i> <i>schwarzii</i>	Willowmore cedar	Baviaanskloofseder (A)	21

INDEPENDENT COMMUNICATIONS AUTHORITY OF SOUTH AFRICA  
NOTICE 636 OF 2019



THE ELECTRONIC COMMUNICATIONS ACT 2005, (ACT NO. 36 OF 2005)

**NOTICE INVITING COMMENTS REGARDING THE DRAFT RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM ASSIGNMENT PLAN FOR THE FREQUENCY BAND 470 TO 694 MHz FOR DIRECT MIGRATION FROM ANALOGUE TELEVISION AND THE RELEASE OF THE BAND 694 TO 862 MHz**

1. The Independent Communications Authority of South Africa ("the Authority"), hereby publishes the **Draft Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan for the frequency band 470 to 694 MHz for public consultation** in terms of sections 30, read with sections 2 (d), 2 (e), 4, 30, 31(4), and 33 of the Electronic Communications Act (Act No. 36 of 2005), read with the Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan 2013, published in Government Gazette number 36321 (Notice 298 of 2013), the Update to the Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan, published in Government Gazette Number 38005 (Notice 801 of 2014), Regulation 3 of the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations 2015 and the IMT Roadmap 2019.

2. The goal of RFSAP is to implement the provisions as detailed in regulation 9 of the Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan published in Government Gazette 38640 (Notices 271, 272, 273 and 274 of 2015).
3. This Draft Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan will supersede any previous radio spectrum assignment arrangements for the same spectrum location once finalised.
4. Interested persons are hereby invited to submit written representations, including an electronic version of the representation in Microsoft Word, of their views on the **draft Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan for the frequency band 470 to 694 MHz for public consultation** by no later than 16h00 on Friday 31 January 2020. The Authority may conduct public hearings.
5. Written representations or enquiries may be directed to:

The Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA)

*350 Witch-Hazel Avenue*

Eco Point Business Park

*Eco Park*

*Centurion*

*or*

Private Bag X10

Highveld Park

0169

**Attention:**

Mr Manyapelo Richard Makgotlho

e-mail: [rmakgotlho@icasa.org.za](mailto:rmakgotlho@icasa.org.za)

6. All written representations submitted to the Authority pursuant to this notice shall be made available for inspection by interested persons from 04 February 2020 at the ICASA Library or website and copies of such representations and documents will be obtainable on payment of a fee.



7. Where persons making representations require that their representation, or part thereof, be treated confidentially, then an application in terms of section 4D of the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa Act, 2000 (Act No. 13 of 2000) must be lodged with the Authority outlining reasons why such information should be treated as confidential in line with the provisions of section 4D (4) (a) to (e). Such an application must be submitted simultaneously with the representation on the draft regulations and plan. Respondents are requested to separate any confidential material into a clearly marked confidential annexure. If, however, the request for confidentiality is refused, the person making the request will be allowed to withdraw the representation or document in question.
8. The guidelines for confidentiality request are contained in Government Gazette Number 41839 (Notice 849 of 2018).



**DR. KEABETSWE MODIMOENG**

**ACTING CHAIRPERSON**



Draft Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan

Rules for Services operating in the Frequency Band  
from 470 to 694 MHz

**Table of Contents**

<b>1. GLOSSARY .....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>2. ABOUT .....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>3. PURPOSE .....</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>4. GENERAL .....</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>6. TRANSMIT CONFIGURATION FOR DVB-T2 .....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>7. RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM ASSIGNMENT PLAN TO CLEAR THE IMT 700 AND IMT 800 SPECTRUM OF THE BROADCASTING SERVICES AFTER ANALOGUE TELEVISION SWITCH-OFF. ....</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>8. RE-ALIGNMENT OF DTT MULTIPLEXES .....</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>9. REQUIREMENTS FOR USAGE OF RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM .....</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>10. IMPLEMENTATION.....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>11. CO-ORDINATION REQUIREMENTS.....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>12. ASSIGNMENT .....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>13. AMENDMENT .....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>14. RADIO FREQUENCY MIGRATION .....</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>APPENDIX A NATIONAL RADIO FREQUENCY PLAN .....</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>APPENDIX B INTERFERENCE RESOLUTION PROCESS.....</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>APPENDIX C INTERFERENCE CASES PER PROVINCE .....</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>APPENDIX F EXAMPLE OF SFN FREQUENCIES INCLUDED IN THE ITU BRIFIC FOR ITALY: CHANNEL 26 WITH 230 SFN TRANSMITTER STATIONS .....</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>ANNEXURE A .....</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>ANNEXURE B .....</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>ANNEXURE C .....</b>	<b>38</b>

## 1. Glossary

In this Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan, terms used shall have the same meaning as in the Electronic Communications Act 2005 (no. 36 of 2005); unless the context indicates otherwise;

<b>“Act”</b>	means the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act No. 36 of 2005) as amended
<b>Administration</b>	means Members States of the International Telecommunications Union.
<b>“DTT”</b>	means Digital Terrestrial Television
<b>“DVB-T2”</b>	means Digital Video Broadcasting – Second Generation Terrestrial
<b>“IMT”</b>	means International Mobile Telecommunications
<b>“ITA”</b>	means Invitation to Apply
<b>“ITU”</b>	means the International Telecommunication Union
<b>“ITU-R”</b>	means the International Telecommunication Union Radiocommunication Sector
<b>“NRFP”</b>	means the National Radio Frequency Plan 2013 for South Africa
<b>“PCI”</b>	means Physical-Layer Cell Identities
<b>“RFSAP”</b>	means Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan
<b>“SFN”</b>	means Single Frequency Networks
<b>“WRC-12”</b>	means World Radio Conference 2012 held in Geneva
<b>“WRC-15”</b>	means the World Radio Conference 2015 held in Geneva

## 2. About

- 2.1 The Authority published the Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan 2013, in Government Gazette number 36321 (Notice 298 of 2013) on 02 April 2013 in terms of Sections 4(2) (b) and 30(1).
- 2.2 This draft Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan is to be read in conjunction with the National Radio Frequency Plan 2018 and the Radio Frequency Migration Plan 2019.

- 2.3 The Authority on 16 September 2014, further published the update to the Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan in Government Gazette 38005 (Notice 801 of 2014).
- 2.4 This Draft Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan (“RFSAP”) is published for the purposes of adding further detail to the assignment of broadcasting frequencies, with a specific emphasis on frequencies that have been coordinated within the Southern Development Community (“SADC”) and notified to the International Telecommunications Union Radiocommunications (“ITU-R”). The Digital Terrestrial Television assignments have met the conformance Requirements of the Geneva Agreement of 2006 (“GE-06”) and have been notified to the ITU-R Master International Frequency Register (“MIFR”).
- 2.5 The aim of Draft RFSAP is to enable the implementation of the Single Frequency Network (“SFN”) Assignments in Annexure J of the update to the Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan in the Government Gazette Number 38005 (Notice 801 of 2014) for the Digital Terrestrial Television (“DTT”) Multiplexes one (1) and two (2) to ensure an expedited television analogue switch off in order to enable the early release of the IMT700 and IMT800.

### 3. Purpose

3.1 The purpose of this Draft RFSAP is:

- 3.1.1 to provide a plan for the phased approach in implementing the analogue television switch-off onto Digital Terrestrial Television through an SFN;
- 3.1.2 to implement the Transitional arrangements provisions set out in regulation 9 of the Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan published in Government Gazette 38640 (Notices 271, 272, 273 and 274 of 2015);
- 3.1.3 to provide information on the requirements attached to the use of a frequency band in line with the allocation and other information in the latest version of the National Radio Frequency Plan (“NRF”);
- 3.1.4 to provide information on technical characteristics of radio systems, frequency channelling, coordination and details on required migration of existing users of the band and the expected method of assignment;
- 3.1.5 to provide the requirements necessary for the utilisation of the frequency band between 470 to 694 MHz for DTT in order to release frequencies in the band 694 to 860 MHz for IMT immediately after analogue television switch-off in the affected areas;
- 3.1.6 to ensure that alignment of Annexure J of the Terrestrial Broadcasting Plan 2013, as with the notified frequencies of the ITU-R MIFR. The aim being to emphasise the ITU’s recognition that stated that MT systems which are mobile systems that provide access to a wide range of telecommunication services including advanced mobile services, supported by mobile and fixed networks, which are increasingly packet-based; and
- 3.1.7 to speed-up the process to release 694 to 854 MHz for IMT as the Authority has decided on the early availability of the IMT700 and IMT800. The RFSAP is being consulted on to enable for immediate availability of the band 470 to 694 MHz at the time of analogue switch-off.

3.2 The key features of this RFSAP are:

- 3.2.1 a high degree of commonality of functionality worldwide while retaining the flexibility to support a wide range of services and applications in a cost-efficient manner;
- 3.2.2 compatibility of services within IMT and with fixed broadcast networks;
- 3.2.3 capability of interworking with other radio access systems;



- 3.2.4 high quality DTT services;
- 3.2.5 user equipment suitable for worldwide use;
- 3.2.6 user-friendly applications, services and equipment; and
- 3.2.7 allow for the most efficient use of the spectrum using the DVB-T2 technology together with SFN networks.

#### 4. General

- 4.1 South Africa adopted the DVB-T2 broadcast transmission standard for implementation. This said standard is a DVB European-based Consortium standard adopted by the ITU and its radio Regulations.
- 4.2 All installations to be used for purposes of transmission with the said standard must comply with safety rules as specified in applicable standards.
- 4.3 A further requirement will be that any equipment that will be used for purposes of transmission with the said standard shall be required to obtain certification under South African laws and Regulations.
- 4.4 The assignment of the frequency band 470 to 694 MHz and the channel arrangement as outlined in the Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan, 2013 Annexure J as updated in 2014, provides that the Terrestrial Broadcast Frequency Plan, 2013 does not allow for a direct migration from analogue to digital television but rather for a two-stage process which will first allow analogue television to be transmitted in parallel with DTT and thereafter there will be a restacking process of frequencies to release the digital dividend (694 to 854 MHz);
- 4.5 The said plan has however been overtaken by events since the deadline for analogue switch-off passed on 17 June 2015, furthermore, the analogue and digital assignments above 694 MHz are no longer protected and have been suppressed from the ITU-R MIFR.
- 4.6 In order to eliminate interference to existing analogue transmissions during the dual illumination period there will be frequency changes required to DTT frequencies within the band 470 to 694 MHz before analogue switch-off.
- 4.7 Analogue switch-off also applies to Analogue Terrestrial Broadcast Self-Help stations (“Self-Help stations”) which, in most cases, will have to migrate to Direct To Home (DTH) as there will not be DTT available in these areas including the provisions for Self-Help stations. Analogue switch-off for Self-Help stations shall be implemented in accordance with the provisions in section 2.4 on Self-Help stations in the Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan, 2013.
- 4.8 The requirement for the migration of Studio Transmitter Links within the 800 MHz band need to migrate immediately out of the band as per Terrestrial Broadcast Frequency Plan, 2013 and the NFRP 2018.

4.9 The Authority has managed the Liquid Telecom assignments in the bands 827.775 – 832.695 MHz paired with 872.775 – 877.695 MHz in order to ensure migration destination band through the publication on 29 March 2019, in Government Gazette: 42337 (Notice Number 165 of 2019). This guard band might not be adequate to resolve all interferences and additional filtering might be required depending on the deployment situation.

4.10 The Authority has studied SFN's which are registered with the ITU in the Radiocommunications Bureau (BR) International Frequency Information Circular (BRIFIC) database and noticed that numerous of them similar to the size of SFN's in the South African BRIFIC entries such as for instance:

4.11 The United Kingdom

In the United Kingdom, there are several SFN assignments that exceed 200 km.

4.12 Spain

In Spain, there are numerous SFN assignments that exceed 300 km in size.

4.13 France

In France, there are several SFN assignments that exceed the Gauteng SFN size.

4.14 Italy

In Italy, there are numerous SFN assignments that exceed 300 km.

4.15 Portugal

In Portugal, there is one national SFN for the whole country.

4.16 *The Authority extracted and analysed the SFN's which are registered with the ITU in the BRIFIC database and noticed that many of them are similar to the size of SFN's in the South African BRIFIC entries. An example of these entries is attached as **Appendix E**.*

- 4.17 The benchmark revealed that there are much larger SFN entries in the ITU-R MIFR as compared to the South African entries, such as those of Italy, United Kingdom, Spain, Portugal and numerous other countries that have implemented SFNs. The RFSAP allows for a guard band of 9 MHz above 694 MHz to limit possible interference between IMT 700 and the DTT services in accordance with footnote 5.296 and Resolution 235 (WRC-15) of the ITU Radio Regulations edition 2016.

## **5. ITU Recommendations, Resolutions and Reports**

The ITU-R Recommendations constitute a set of international technical standards developed by the Radiocommunication Sector (formerly CCIR) of the ITU. They are the result of studies undertaken by Radiocommunication Study Groups on:

- 5.1 the use of a vast range of wireless services, including popular new mobile communication technologies;
- 5.2 the management of the radio-frequency spectrum and satellite orbits;
- 5.3 the efficient use of the radio-frequency spectrum by all radiocommunication services;
- 5.4 terrestrial and satellite radiocommunication broadcasting;
- 5.5 radio wave propagation;
- 5.6 systems and networks for the fixed-satellite service, for the fixed service and the mobile service;
- 5.7 space operation, Earth exploration-satellite, meteorological-satellite and radio astronomy services.
- 5.8 The ITU has provided Recommendations, Resolutions and Reports with respect to the utilisation of band 470 – 690 for purposes of advising Administrations the planning criteria, including protection ratios, for various methods of providing second generation digital terrestrial television broadcasting (DTTB) systems in the VHF/UHF bands as follows:
  - 5.8.1 Recommendation ITU-R M.2012-1 (02/2014): Detailed specifications of the terrestrial radio interfaces of International Mobile Telecommunications-Advanced (IMT Advanced);
  - 5.8.2 Report ITU-R2241-0 Compatibility studies in relation to Resolution 224 in the bands 698-806 MHz and 790-862 MHz;

- 5.8.3 Report ITU-R M.2074: Report on Radio Aspects for the terrestrial component of IMT-2000 and systems beyond IMT-2000;
- 5.8.4 Recommendation ITU-R M.1645 Framework and overall objectives of the future development of IMT-2000 and systems beyond IMT-2000;
- 5.8.5 Resolution 235 (WRC-15);
- 5.8.6 Resolution 5.549 (WRC-15);
- 5.8.7 The ITU Radio Regulations (RR), Provision Number 5.1.2 of the Geneva 2006 (GE06) Agreement, and the World Radiocommunications Conference (WRC) Resolution 224-4, Resolution 232 (WRC-12) and the results of activities undertaken by the within ITU Region 1 (African Region);
- 5.8.8 Recommendation ITU-R M.2090-0 incorporated by reference into the ITU Radio Regulations by WRC 15 with key emphasis on specific unwanted emission limit of International Mobile Telecommunication (IMT) mobile stations operating in the frequency band 694-790 MHz to facilitate the protection of existing services in the ITU Region 1 in the frequency band 470-694 MHz;
- 5.8.9 Recommendation ITU R M.1036-5 incorporated by reference into the ITU Radio Regulations by WRC 15 dealing with the lower duplexer of the Frequency arrangement A5 in Recommendation ITU R M.1036 (i.e. uplink in 703-733 MHz) and a maximum output power of 23 dBm, to provide for a nine (9) MHz guard band between Broadcasting and IMT; and
- 5.8.10 ITU Report ITU-R BT.2339-0, incorporated by reference into the ITU Radio Regulations by WRC 15, with respect to co-channel sharing and compatibility studies between digital terrestrial television broadcasting and IMT in the frequency band 694-790 MHz in the GE06 planning area were studied and ITU-R Reports was developed in this respect.

## 6. Transmit Configuration for DVB-T2

- 6.1 The DTT Frequency Plan in Annexure J of the Terrestrial Broadcasting Plan 2013, is designed with the Transmit Configuration for DVB-T2 (Fixed Reception). The Terrestrial DTT Frequency Plan which was developed for South Africa is based on the following transmit configuration:

Technology:	DVB-T2
Constellation:	256 QAM
FEC/Code Rate:	3/5
Guard Interval	1/8
Location Probability:	95%
FFT size	32Ke
Block length	64800
Effective minimum usable field strength (CH21):	49.873 dBuV/m
Capacity	30.01Mb/s
Pilot Pattern	PP2

- 6.2 This transmit configuration is the most optimum transition configuration preferred. However, if the guard interval is smaller than the specified GI, this will lead to self-interference in the network. The Authority therefore emphasise that the transmission parameters should comply to the specified transmission configuration above even though 3 Mbit/s may be compromised.

- 6.3 The following transmit configuration or similar is possible, however, caution should apply as self-interference may result on the network thus making the SFN(s) unimplementable. See below said transmit configuration:

Constellation:	256 QAM
FEC/Code Rate:	3/5
Guard Interval	1/16
Location Probability:	95%
FFT size	32Ke
Block length	64800



Effective minimum usable field strength (CH21):	49.375 dBuV/m
Capacity	33.27 Mb/s
Pilot Pattern	PP4

## 7. Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan to clear the IMT 700 and IMT 800 spectrum of the Broadcasting Services after analogue television switch-off.

- 7.1 The Terrestrial Television Broadcasting Frequencies as registered and Coordinated with ITU and South Africa's six (6) neighbouring countries in accordance with the GE-06 Agreement. Further, South Africa's current DTT frequency plan is also registered with the ITU in accordance with the Geneva 06 and coordinated with South Africa's six (6) neighbouring countries.
- 7.2 The Terrestrial Television Plan contains 1257 frequencies for DTT implementation in the band 470 MHz to 694 MHz. This plan is commonly known as the seven (7) MUX plan since it provides for the deployment of seven multiplexes per transmission point in an 8 MHz channels per province as per the diagram below. The Figures and maps below summarise the construction of the 7 MUX plan and the multiplex group combinations in the respective provinces.

No.	Group 1	Group 2	Group 3	Group 4
1	CH21	CH22	CH23	CH24
2	CH25	CH26	CH27	CH28
3	CH29	CH30	CH31	CH32
4	CH33	CH34	CH35	CH36
5	CH37	CH38	CH39	CH40
6	CH41	CH42	CH43	CH44
7	CH45	CH46	CH47	CH48

Figure 1

MUX	NC1	NC2	NW	LP1	LP2	MP	KZN	GP	WC	EC	FS
MX1	3 (CH23)	4 (CH24)	2 (CH22)	1 (CH21)	2 (CH22)	3 (CH23)	2 (CH22)	4 (CH24)	1 (CH21)	3 (CH23)	1 (CH21)
MX2	3 (CH27)	4 (CH28)	2 (CH26)	1 (CH25)	2 (CH26)	3 (CH27)	2 (CH26)	4 (CH28)	1 (CH25)	3 (CH27)	1 (CH25)
MX3	3 (CH31)	4 (CH32)	2 (CH30)	1 (CH29)	2 (CH30)	3 (CH31)	2 (CH30)	4 (CH32)	1 (CH29)	3 (CH31)	1 (CH29)
MX4	3 (CH35)	4 (CH36)	2 (CH34)	1 (CH33)	2 (CH34)	3 (CH35)	2 (CH34)	4 (CH36)	1 (CH33)	3 (CH35)	1 (CH33)
MX5	3 (CH39)	4 (CH40)	2 (CH38)	3 (CH39)	1 (CH37)	2 (CH38)	4 (CH40)	4 (CH40)	1 (CH37)	2 (CH38)	1 (CH37)
MX6	3 (CH43)	4 (CH44)	2 (CH42)	3 (CH43)	1 (CH41)	2 (CH42)	3 (CH43)	4 (CH44)	1 (CH41)	2 (CH42)	1 (CH41)
MX7	3 (CH47)	4 (CH48)	2 (CH46)	3 (CH47)	1 (CH45)	2 (CH46)	3 (CH47)	4 (CH48)	1 (CH45)	2 (CH46)	1 (CH45)

Figure 2

- [illegible]

### Figure 3

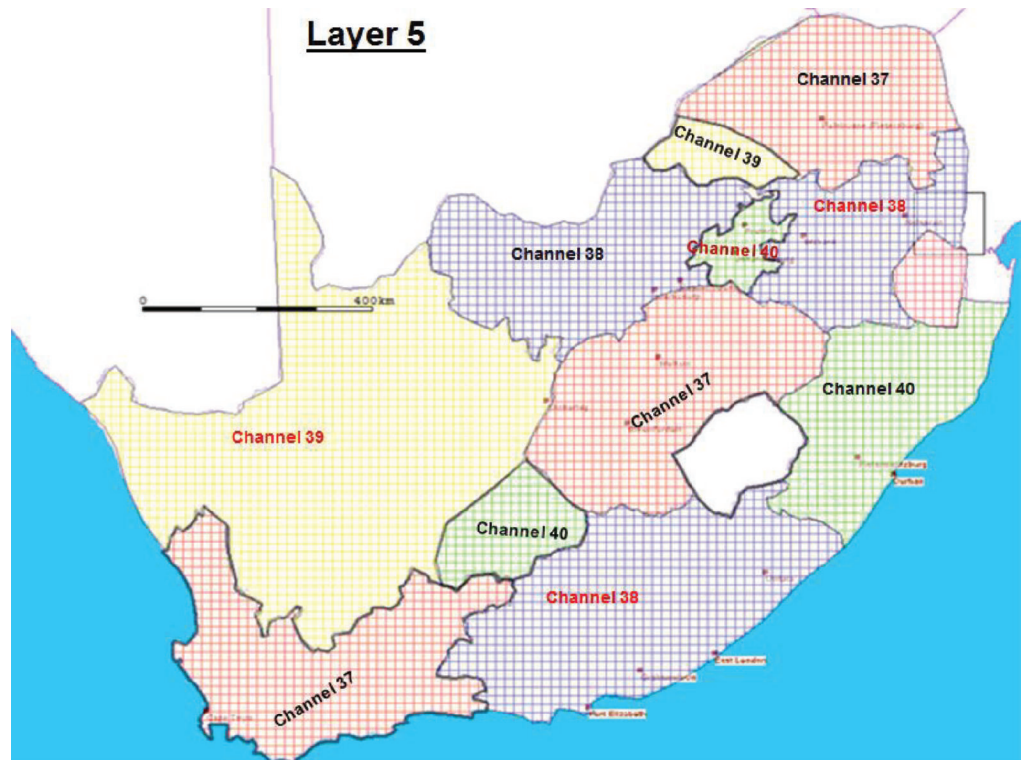


Figure 4

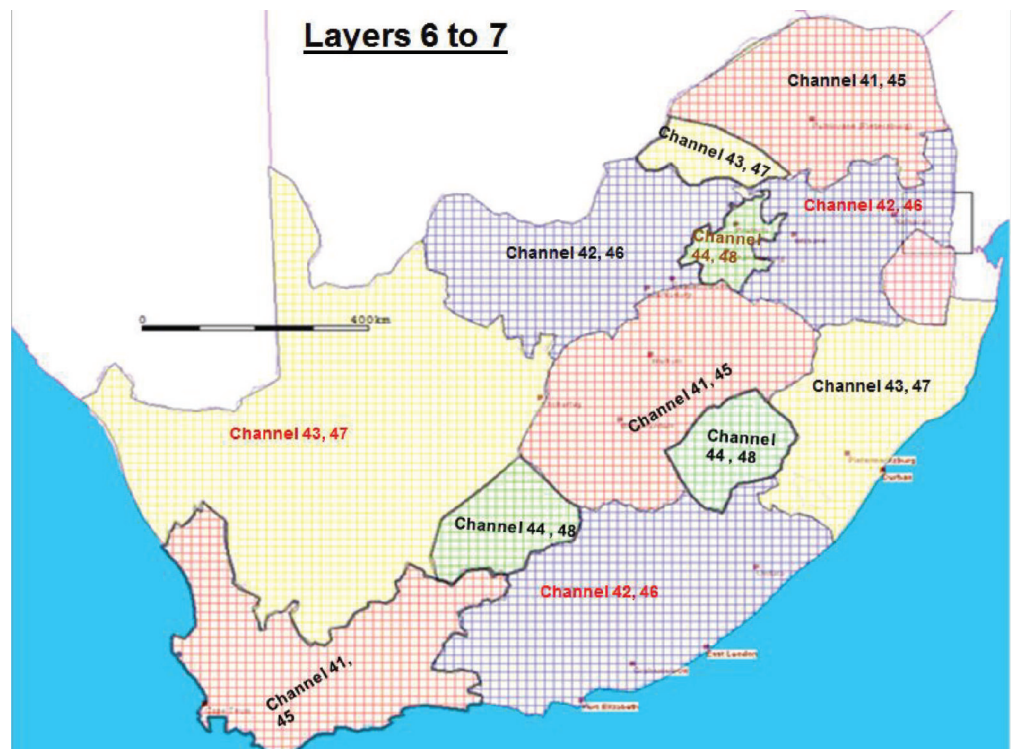


Figure 5

- 7.6 The current plan for Analogue Switch Off (ASO) is to launch DTT on a MFN thus compelling a second migration phase before being able to release IMT700 and IMT800 spectrum. This approach also implies an extended dual illumination phase (where analogue and digital television operational in the band 470 MHz to 860 MHz) before releasing the IMT spectrum after the second migration phase and ASO.
- 7.7 It is currently envisaged that all analogue services will be switched off by 2020 after which the restacking process (anticipated to require an additional two (2) years) will start to fully release IMT700 and IMT800 spectrum by around 2022.
- 7.8 Whereas the Authority initially developed the coordinated 7MUX frequency plan for South Africa it now intends to develop an implementation strategy for this plan whereby the ASO process can be accelerated to ensure the earliest possible release of Dividend 1 and Dividend 2 spectrum for IMT use.
- 7.9 The purpose of this approach is to describe and offer the compilation of this accelerated digital deployment and ASO plan. The scenario where the Guard Interval is smaller than the specified Guard Interval will lead to self-interference in the network. This RFSAP therefore emphasise that the transmission parameters must comply with the above specified transmission configuration. This is to ensure the envisaged optimised implementation of the DTT Plan in Annexure A and Annexure B is realised within the envisage immediate implementation.

## 8. Re-Alignment of DTT Multiplexes

- 8.1 After analogue switch-off the operational frequencies will be re-aligned in accordance with Annexure J of the Terrestrial Broadcasting Plan 2013, as amended. In order to ensure re-alignment from analogue television switch to SFN, Annexure J of the Terrestrial Broadcasting Plan 2013, as amended, has been revised into **Annexure A** and **Annexure B** of this RFSAP.
- 8.2 To create a plan with the least possible interference the large SFN's were broken up into smaller SFN's in some provinces. In **Annexure A** and **Annexure B**.
- 8.3 The Freq (MHz) and CH are the frequency and associated channel number at which the service shall be implemented in transitional phase to ensure that the IMT 700 and IMT 800 frequencies

can immediately be released after analogue switch-off. The Transitional Phase is the time period taken to Switch Analogue Frequencies directly to the Digital Single Frequency Network (SFN).

- 8.4 In the transitional phase there are no DTT assignments above 694 MHz. The final phase includes the frequencies and its associated final channel numbers which the station will operate in the provincial SFN network. The envisaged analogue switch-off dates per province to ensure the release IMT700 and IMT 800 frequencies are as follows:

Item	Province	Frequency Migration to channel below 694 MHz	Analogue Switch-off Date
1	Free State	Phase 1 Starts (0 Month)	Phase 1 Ends (4 Months)
2	Northern Cape	Phase 2 starts (2 Months)	Phase 2 Ends (4 Months)
3	Limpopo Province	Phase 3 Starts (2 Months)	Phase 3 Ends (4 Months)
4	North West	Phase 4 Starts (2 Months)	Phase 4 Ends (4 Months)
5	Mpumalanga	Phase 5 Starts (2 Months)	Phase 5 Ends (4 Months)
6	Gauteng	Phase 6 Starts (2 Months)	Phase 6 Ends (4 Months)
7	Western Cape	Phase 7 Starts (2 Months)	Phase 7 Ends (4 Months)
8	Kwa-Zulu Natal	Phase 8 Starts (2 Months)	Phase 8 Ends (4 Months)
9	Eastern Cape	Phase 9 Starts (2 Months)	Phase 9 Ends (4 Months)

NB: The timelines are to be adjusted in accordance with the Policy imperatives and the representations from Industry based on a workable plan.

- 8.5 The Authority aim that the IMT700 and IMT800 shall be clear from the broadcaster by end of the first semester of 2021.

- 8.6 The main advantages of changing all Multi- Frequency Network (MFN) DTT assignments below CH49 Single Frequency Network (SFN) before starting the analogue switch-off are as following:



- 8.6.1 the first migration of all analogue stations interfered with by DTT stations can be initiated – These transmitter stations affected is included in Appendix E;
- 8.6.2 South Africa can then initiate the migration of all Digital Dividend 1 (“DD1”) analogue transmitters to Digital in order to clear the DD1 dividend (790 to 860 MHz);
- 8.6.3 South Africa can then initiate the migration all Digital Dividend 2 (“DD2”) analogue transmitters to Digital in order to clear the DD2 dividend (694 to 790 MHz); and
- 8.6.4 broadcasting service licensees can then migrate all analogue TV services in the band (470 to 694 MHz) at a pace that will not impact negatively on the broadcasters.

## **9. Requirements for usage of Radio Frequency Spectrum**

- 9.1 This section covers the minimum key characteristics considered necessary to make the best use of the available frequencies.
- 9.2 The use of the 470 TO 694 MHz Frequency band is limited for DTT services and only systems using digital technologies that promote spectral efficiency will be issued with an assignment. Capacity enhancing digital techniques are being rapidly developed and such techniques that promote efficient use of spectrum, without reducing quality of service are encouraged. In some cases, a radio system conforming to the requirements of this RFSAP may require modifications if harmful interference is caused to other radio stations or systems.
- 9.3 The allocation of spectrum and shared services within these bands are found in the NRFP and an extract of NRFP 2018 is shown in **Appendix A**.
- 9.4 While the maximum radiated power to be allowed is contained in Annexure A and Annexure B of this RFSAP.
- 9.5 In some cases, a radio system conforming to the requirements of this RFSAP may require modifications if harmful interference occurs.
- 9.6 The interference analysis results for digital on analogue transmission during the transitional phase are shown in Annexure C.
- 9.7 Lastly, Criteria and guidelines for interference mitigation are dealt by Joint Spectrum Advisory Group, established in terms of the Digital Migration Regulations, 2012.

## **10. Implementation**

- 10.1 This RFSAP will come into effect upon publication in the Government Gazette
- 10.2 No new assignment in the frequency range 470 to 694 MHz shall be approved unless they comply with this RFSAP.
- 10.3 The propagation model for use in contained in ITU-R Recommendation P.1546.

## **11. Co-ordination Requirements**

All the frequencies used in this RFSAP have been coordinated and the assignment which have been included in the ITU-R BRIFIC database. All the frequencies used in this RFSAP are either coordinated or fall outside the coordination contour of the assignment which is registered in the BRIFIC ITU database. All coordination has been performed in line with the Geneva 2006 Agreement (GE06).

## **12. Assignment**

The assignments in this frequency band are made in accordance with the procedure for Standard Applications in line with regulation 5 of the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations 2015, as amended.

## **13. Amendment**

- 13.1 Existing Radio Frequency Spectrum Licences must be amended within the timelines in section 9 of this RFSAP, in accordance with regulation 9 of the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations 2015, as amended, read with regulation 12 (3) of the Digital Migration Regulations published in the Government Gazette Number 36000 (Notice 1070 of 2012).



**14. Radio Frequency Migration**

## 14.1 Specific Procedure

14.2 Radio Frequency Spectrum Licensees in this band shall migrate in accordance with phases in Annexure A and Annexure B in line with timelines indicated in Section 9 of this RFSAP.

14.3 Affected licensees are to apply for an amendment of their spectrum licences where applicable.

## Appendix A National Radio Frequency Plan

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
<b>470-694 MHz</b>  BROADCASTING          5.149 5.291A 5.294 5.296 5.300 5.304 5.306 5.311A 5.312	<b>470-694 MHz</b>  BROADCASTING   RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.304       <b>5.149 5.311A</b>	DTT Broadcasting (470-694 MHz)     Radio Astronomy (606 – 614 MHz)  SAP/SAB Applications	Broadcasting Allotments in accordance with GE89 and GE06. Broadcast assignments in accordance with the latest version of the Terrestrial Broadcasting Frequency Plan as amended (GG No.36321) 02 April 2013. Band IV/V Analogue television is to be migrated to digital television and ensure harmonisation with SADC. <b>The use of ‘White Spaces’ in this band is under consideration (subject to Non Interference Non Protection basis to users under a primary allocation).</b> 470 - 606 MHz, max. 50 mW ERP 606 - 614 MHz, max. 50 mW ERP

## Appendix B Interference Resolution Process

When requesting coordination, the relevant characteristics of the base station and the code or PCI group number should be forwarded to the Administration that is members States of the ITU affected. All of the following characteristics should be Included:

- carrier frequency [MHz];
- name of transmitter station;
- country of location of transmitter station;
- geographical coordinates [latitude, longitude];

- e) effective antenna height [m];
- f) antenna polarisation;
- g) antenna azimuth [deg];
- h) antenna gain [dBd];
- i) effective radiated power [dBW];
- j) expected coverage zone or radius [km];
- k) date of entry into service [month, year];
- l) code group number used; and
- m) antenna tilt [deg].

The Administration affected shall evaluate the request for coordination and shall within 30 days notify the result of the evaluation to the Administration requesting coordination. If in the course of the coordination procedure the Administration affected requires additional information, it may request such information.

If in the course of the coordination procedure, an Administration may request additional information.

If no reply is received by the Administration requesting coordination within 30 days, it may send a reminder to the Administration affected. An Administration not having responded within 30 days following communication of the reminder shall be deemed to have given its consent and the code co-ordination may be put into use with the characteristics given in the request for coordination.

The periods mentioned above may be extended by common consent.

## **Appendix C Interference cases per province**

DTT frequencies selected from 7 Mux plan to minimize interference on existing analogue. See sections on frequency assignments/allotments.

### **Easter Cape CH 46 - MUX 1**

Interference Herschel CH46 SBC3 - Confirm "on air" Consider Herschel as priority area for Analogue Switch-off

Sterkspruit - Large power difference on adjacent channel 47 - ensure same TX power levels - This will resolve the interference

Aliwal North Goedemoed - Co-Channel on CH46 - switch over to satellite reception

### **Eastern Cape CH 35- MUX2**

Despatch Adjacent Channel with Despatch CH34 - slight interference - ensure same transmission power - This will resolve the interference

Barkley East co-channel CH 35 - slight interference - Increase the power on SBC1 Transmitter with 6 dB to overcome interference

### **Northern Cape CH31 - MUX 2**

No interference predicted

### **Northern Cape CH24 & CH27 MUX 1**

No interference predicted

### **Western Cape CH33 & CH38 MUX1**

No Interference predicted

### **Western Cape CH29 MUX2**

Graafwater interfered by Piketberg - Graafwater Self-help viewers to migrate to satellite immediately

### **Northern Province Mux 1 & 2 Area A**

No interference CH21 & CH33

### **Northern Province Mux 1 Area B CH26**

No Interference

### **Northern Province Mux 2 Area B CH30**

No Interference

### **Mpumalanga Mux1 CH35**

Slight Interference Davel etv CH34 on outskirts (complementary coverage available) and Steelpoort Legobo SBC3 Self-Help

### **Mpumalanga Mux 2 CH31**

Light interference in Davel CH30 Coverage (SABC1)

**North West Mux 1 CH34**

No interference problems

**North West Mux 2 CH46**

No interference problems - Mux2 split not required

**Gauteng Mux 1 CH 36**

No interference predicted

**Gauteng Mux 2 CH 44**

There is some interference on the Potgietersrus etv transmission on CH44 near Nylstroom. Pretoria etv CH29 offer Complementary Coverage. Prioritize analogue switch-off in Potgietersrus coverage area near Nylstroom

**KwaZulu-Natal Mux 1 CH 30**

Interference on Maqabaqabeni SBC3 CH30 - Confirm "on air" If "On Air" treat as priority area for Analogue "switch off"

**KwaZulu-Natal Mux 2 CH 40**

No Interference

**Free State Mux 1 CH21**

Koffiefontein (CH21) SBC1, Phillipolis (CH21) SBC2, Marquard (CH21) SBC1, Manguzi (CH21) SBC1.

**Free State Mux 2 CH25**

Grootvlei Eskom (CH25) SBC2, Marquard (CH25) SBC1, Manguzi (CH25) SBC1.

**Population in areas where interference is possible**

Item	Program	People located in area	Percentage people located in area
1	etv	56 724	0.10%
2	SABC1	260921	0.45%
3	SABC2	58305	0.10%
4	SABC3	96122	0.17%

**Important remarks**

Figures above reflects the maximum number of people located in the areas where interference is possible. Population figures do not include households that already migrated to DTT or DTH (indication is that 60%

of television viewers already migrated to DTH or DTT). Most viewers affected will experience slight interference on analogue TV program. As such, Special efforts should be made to migrate affected viewers and others to DTT & DTH as soon as possible to avoid interference. Emphasis should be placed on migration of analogue television viewers who experience interference and where the frequency is transmitted above the 694 MHz to release the spectrum for IMT.

**Appendix F Example of SFN Frequencies included in the ITU BRIFIC for Italy:  
Channel 26 with 230 SFN Transmitter Stations**





ANNEXURE A

No.	MUX	DTT	TX-Name	Freq. (MHz)	CH	ERP (kW)	Longitude	Latitude	Province	Pol.	SN Id	CH	Freq. (MHz)
1	1	DVB-T2	MOUNT AYLIFF	634	41	50	029°23'41.000"	-30°50'11.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
2	1	DVB-T2	NGANGELIZWE	674	46	0.2	028°48'31.000"	-31°23'15.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
3	1	DVB-T2	NGQLENI	674	46	10	029°07'34.000"	-31°45'57.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
4	1	DVB-T2	NOUPOORT	498	24	10	024°56'01.000"	-31°18'14.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
5	1	DVB-T2	PAIENSIE	674	46	0.05	024°49'43.000"	-33°45'37.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
6	1	DVB-T2	PAUL SAUER DAM	674	46	0.1	024°33'43.000"	-33°45'13.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
7	1	DVB-T2	PORT ELIZABETH	674	46	72	025°26'29.000"	-33°56'10.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
8	1	DVB-T2	PORT ELIZABETH CITY	674	46	2	025°35'31.000"	-33°55'28.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
9	1	DVB-T2	PORTST JOHNS	674	46	10	029°31'39.000"	-31°36'39.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
10	1	DVB-T2	QUEENSTOWN	674	46	58	026°47'05.000"	-31°43'56.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
11	1	DVB-T2	SOMERSET EAST	674	46	0.125	025°34'41.000"	-32°42'45.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
12	1	DVB-T2	STERKSPRUIT	674	46	20	027°16'14.000"	-30°41'44.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
13	1	DVB-T2	STRAALHOEK	674	46	10	029°50'53.000"	-30°20'49.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
14	1	DVB-T2	SUURBERG	674	46	40	025°34'29.000"	-33°14'55.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
15	1	DVB-T2	UGIE	674	46	0.7	027°58'26.000"	-31°11'28.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
16	1	DVB-T2	UMTATA	674	46	10	028°44'36.000"	-31°35'48.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
17	1	DVB-T2	WILLOWMORE	674	46	1	023°27'36.000"	-33°14'05.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
18	1	DVB-T2	ALI WAL NORTH	674	46	50	026°34'00.000"	-30°47'05.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
19	1	DVB-T2	ANDRIE SKRAAL	674	46	0.1	024°42'35.000"	-33°46'42.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
20	1	DVB-T2	BARKLY EAST	674	46	0.5	027°26'00.000"	-30°51'30.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
21	1	DVB-T2	BEDFORD	674	46	10	026°02'57.000"	-32°37'57.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
22	1	DVB-T2	BURGERSDORP	674	46	0.25	026°20'21.000"	-31°00'02.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
23	1	DVB-T2	BUTTERWORTH	674	46	10	028°12'25.000"	-32°16'35.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
24	1	DVB-T2	CALA	674	46	20	027°45'02.000"	-31°33'15.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
25	1	DVB-T2	GRADOCK	674	46	20	025°32'27.000"	-32°18'01.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
26	1	DVB-T2	DESPATCH	674	46	2	025°25'29.000"	-33°45'53.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
27	1	DVB-T2	EAST LONDON	674	46	63	027°48'58.000"	-32°56'20.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
28	1	DVB-T2	ELANDS HEIGHT	674	46	100	028°07'10.000"	-30°47'44.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
29	1	DVB-T2	ENGCOBO	674	46	10	028°00'34.000"	-31°39'20.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
30	1	DVB-T2	ENTSHATSHONGO	674	46	50	028°40'10.000"	-32°08'39.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
31	1	DVB-T2	GRAAFF-REINET	674	46	28	024°27'04.000"	-32°04'44.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
32	1	DVB-T2	GRAHAMSTOWN	674	46	65	026°42'31.000"	-33°17'15.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
33	1	DVB-T2	HANKEY	674	46	0.04	024°52'12.000"	-33°49'52.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
34	1	DVB-T2	HOLY CROSS	674	46	30	029°38'25.000"	-31°07'56.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
35	1	DVB-T2	KAREEDOUW	674	46	5	024°25'48.000"	-34°01'29.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
36	1	DVB-T2	KING WILLIAMS TOWN	674	46	18	027°15'36.000"	-32°40'44.000"	EC	H	EC1	46	674
37	1	DVB-T2	KIRKWOOD	674	46	0.1	025°26'53.000"	-33°23'22.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
38	1	DVB-T2	ELLIOT	674	46	0.8	027°51'57.000"	-31°10'36.000"	EC	V	EC1	46	674
39	1	DVB-T2	PETRUS STEYN	474	21	20	028°19'06.000"	-27°30'51.000"	FS	H	FS1	21	474
40	1	DVB-T2	SENEKAL	474	21	10	027°30'26.000"	-28°15'19.000"	FS	H	FS1	21	474
41	1	DVB-T2	SPRINGFONTEIN	474	21	20	025°46'08.000"	-30°16'14.000"	FS	H	FS1	21	474
42	1	DVB-T2	UIDRAND (KROONSTAD)	474	21	0.25	027°14'16.000"	-27°41'18.000"	FS	V	FS1	21	474
43	1	DVB-T2	THEUNISSEN	546	30	34	026°34'50.000"	-28°11'55.000"	FS	H	FS1	21	474
44	1	DVB-T2	WITSIE SHOEK	474	21	10	028°50'49.000"	-28°31'04.000"	FS	V	FS1	21	474
45	1	DVB-T2	BETHLEHEM	474	21	50	028°29'58.000"	-28°14'10.000"	FS	H	FS1	21	474
46	1	DVB-T2	BLOEMFONTEIN	474	21	100	026°13'50.000"	-29°06'13.000"	FS	H	FS1	21	474
47	1	DVB-T2	BOESMANSKOP	474	21	10	027°12'55.000"	-30°00'28.000"	FS	H	FS1	21	474
48	1	DVB-T2	FICKSBURG TOWN	474	21	0.1	027°51'27.000"	-28°52'36.000"	FS	V	FS1	21	474
49	1	DVB-T2	HARRISMITH O74	474	21	50	029°06'25.000"	-28°15'18.000"	FS	V	FS1	21	474
50	1	DVB-T2	KROONSTAD	474	21	50	027°11'10.000"	-27°25'16.000"	FS	H	FS1	21	474
51	1	DVB-T2	LADYBRAND	474	21	10	027°22'42.000"	-29°10'18.000"	FS	H	FS1	21	474
52	1	DVB-T2	DEWETSDORP	474	21	0.01	026°39'37.000"	-29°34'44.000"	FS	V	FS1	21	474
53	1	DVB-T2	MONDEOR	594	36	0.5	027°59'37.000"	-26°16'54.000"	GP	V	GP1	36	594
54	1	DVB-T2	MULBARTON	594	36	0.03	028°03'56.000"	-26°17'36.000"	GP	V	GP1	36	594
55	1	DVB-T2	PRETORIA	594	36	70	027°59'03.000"	-25°41'20.000"	GP	H	GP1	36	594
56	1	DVB-T2	PRETORIA NORTH	594	36	0.25	028°10'07.000"	-25°41'25.000"	GP	V	GP1	36	594
57	1	DVB-T2	SUNNYSIDE	594	36	20	028°12'24.000"	-25°45'53.000"	GP	V	GP1	36	594
58	1	DVB-T2	WELVEDIEND	594	36	90	027°14'55.000"	-26°26'47.000"	GP	H	GP1	36	594
59	1	DVB-T2	BEZ VALLEY	594	36	0.5	028°05'04.000"	-26°11'41.000"	GP	V	GP1	36	594
60	1	DVB-T2	HEIDELBERG	594	36	1	028°20'53.000"	-26°29'19.000"	GP	V	GP1	36	594

No.	MUX	DTT	TX-Name	Freq. (MHz)	CH	ERP (kW)	Longitude	Latitude	Province	Pol.	SFN Id	CH	Freq. (MHz)
61	1	DVB-T2	HELDERKRUIJN	594	36	20	027°51'32.000"	-26°06'05.000"	GP	V	GP1	36	594
62	1	DVB-T2	JOHANNESBURG	594	36	50	028°00'26.000"	-26°11'31.000"	GP	H	GP1	36	594
63	1	DVB-T2	LINMEYER	594	36	0.1	028°04'16.000"	-26°16'08.000"	GP	V	GP1	36	594
64	1	DVB-T2	MENLO PARK	594	36	0.2	028°16'09.000"	-25°46'15.000"	GP	V	GP1	36	594
65	1	DVB-T2	MOOI RIVER	546	30	10	029°52'04.000"	-29°11'07.000"	KN	H	KZ1	30	546
66	1	DVB-T2	NEWCASLE	546	30	1	029°57'12.000"	-27°43'07.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
67	1	DVB-T2	NONGOMA	658	44	10	031°39'27.000"	-27°54'18.000"	KN	H	KZ1	30	546
68	1	DVB-T2	NQUTU	546	30	15.1	030°40'42.000"	-28°15'43.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
69	1	DVB-T2	OVERPORT	674	46	26	030°59'44.000"	-29°50'12.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
70	1	DVB-T2	PIETERMARITZBURG	546	30	20	030°19'49.000"	-29°34'47.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
71	1	DVB-T2	PONGOLA	658	44	1.5	031°39'00.000"	-27°31'34.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
72	1	DVB-T2	PORT SHEPSTONE	546	30	74	030°17'17.000"	-30°44'07.000"	KN	H	KZ1	30	546
73	1	DVB-T2	QUDENI	546	30	75	030°51'59.000"	-28°38'03.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
74	1	DVB-T2	THE BLUFF	546	30	2.5	031°00'45.000"	-29°54'40.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
75	1	DVB-T2	UBOMBHO	650	43	50	032°04'52.000"	-27°33'42.000"	KN	H	KZ1	30	546
76	1	DVB-T2	ULUNDI	546	30	50	031°23'38.000"	-28°27'00.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
77	1	DVB-T2	VERULAM	546	30	0.01	031°02'19.000"	-29°38'25.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
78	1	DVB-T2	VRYHEID	546	30	10	030°47'38.000"	-27°44'27.000"	KN	H	KZ1	30	546
79	1	DVB-T2	DONNYBROOK	546	30	60	029°51'19.000"	-29°54'56.000"	KN	H	KZ1	30	546
80	1	DVB-T2	DURBAN	546	30	100	030°43'00.000"	-29°46'11.000"	KN	H	KZ1	30	546
81	1	DVB-T2	EMPANGENI	578	34	0.25	031°53'31.000"	-28°44'38.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
82	1	DVB-T2	ESHOWE	546	30	63	031°17'37.000"	-28°51'29.000"	KN	H	KZ1	30	546
83	1	DVB-T2	ESTCOURT	546	30	0.1	029°51'56.000"	-29°00'55.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
84	1	DVB-T2	GLENCOE	546	30	50	029°56'51.000"	-28°09'04.000"	KN	H	KZ1	30	546
85	1	DVB-T2	GREY TOWN	546	30	10	030°32'10.000"	-29°00'46.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
86	1	DVB-T2	GREYTOWNDRP	546	30	1	030°36'48.000"	-29°02'05.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
87	1	DVB-T2	HOWICK	546	30	0.04	030°13'52.000"	-29°30'13.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
88	1	DVB-T2	KOKSTAD	546	30	0.4	029°29'24.000"	-30°36'42.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
89	1	DVB-T2	LADY SMITH	546	30	1	029°47'19.000"	-28°35'23.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
90	1	DVB-T2	LOSKOP	546	30	1.5	029°12'42.000"	-28°39'41.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
91	1	DVB-T2	LOUWSBURG	658	44	15	031°16'32.000"	-27°33'44.000"	KN	V	KZ1	30	546
92	1	DVB-T2	MATA TIELE	546	30	10	028°49'19.000"	-30°23'45.000"	KN	H	KZ1	30	546
93	1	DVB-T2	NYLSTROOM	474	21	1	028°25'59.000"	-24°47'58.000"	L	V	LP1A	21	474
94	1	DVB-T2	POTGIETERSRUS	514	26	62	029°14'10.000"	-24°09'24.000"	L	H	LP1B	26	514
95	1	DVB-T2	SIBASA	514	26	16	030°26'54.000"	-22°56'57.000"	L	V	LP1B	26	514
96	1	DVB-T2	THABAZIMBI	474	21	67	027°36'51.000"	-24°27'59.000"	L	H	LP1A	21	474
97	1	DVB-T2	TZANEEN	514	26	80	030°00'17.000"	-23°47'06.000"	L	H	LP1B	26	514
98	1	DVB-T2	GABA	514	26	8	030°42'25.000"	-22°47'02.000"	L	V	LP1B	26	514
99	1	DVB-T2	MALAMBA	514	26	0.2	030°15'09.000"	-22°53'56.000"	L	V	LP1B	26	514
100	1	DVB-T2	TOLWE	514	26	16	028°27'29.000"	-23°04'59.000"	L	V	LP1B	26	514
101	1	DVB-T2	DZAMBA	514	26	1	030°18'41.000"	-22°49'05.000"	L	V	LP1B	26	514
102	1	DVB-T2	LOUIS TRICHARDT	514	26	23	029°45'26.000"	-23°00'02.000"	L	V	LP1B	26	514
103	1	DVB-T2	TSHAMAVUDZI	514	26	5	030°31'42.000"	-22°39'15.000"	L	V	LP1B	26	514
104	1	DVB-T2	HOEDSPRUIT	586	35	10	030°52'08.000"	-24°32'30.000"	L	H	MP1	35	586
105	1	DVB-T2	MIDDELBURG	586	35	50	029°23'24.000"	-25°49'04.000"	MP	H	MP1	35	586
106	1	DVB-T2	NELSPRUIT	586	35	76	030°46'33.000"	-25°30'55.000"	MP	H	MP1	35	586
107	1	DVB-T2	PIET REEF	586	35	76	030°41'03.000"	-27°01'11.000"	MP	V	MP1	35	586
108	1	DVB-T2	SABIE	586	35	0.1	030°45'34.000"	-25°07'44.000"	MP	V	MP1	35	586
109	1	DVB-T2	STANDERTON	586	35	0.25	029°12'51.000"	-26°57'37.000"	MP	V	MP1	35	586
110	1	DVB-T2	VOLKSRUST	610	38	15	029°53'14.630"	-27°18'36.000"	MP	V	MP1	35	586
111	1	DVB-T2	BURGERSFORT	586	35	50	030°19'48.000"	-24°40'05.000"	MP	H	MP1	35	586
112	1	DVB-T2	CAROLINA	586	35	10	030°37'57.000"	-26°10'37.000"	MP	H	MP1	35	586
113	1	DVB-T2	DAVEL	610	38	50	029°37'26.000"	-26°27'30.000"	MP	H	MP1	35	586
114	1	DVB-T2	DULLSTROOM	586	35	10	030°11'17.000"	-25°34'21.000"	MP	H	MP1	35	586
115	1	DVB-T2	HECTORSPRUIT	586	35	0.631	031°36'20.000"	-25°28'47.000"	MP	V	MP1	35	586
116	1	DVB-T2	LYDENBURG	586	35	0.1	030°26'04.000"	-25°06'19.000"	MP	V	MP1	35	586
117	1	DVB-T2	MBUZINI	586	35	20	031°54'53.000"	-25°52'26.000"	MP	V	MP1	35	586
118	1	DVB-T2	POFADDER	522	27	30	018°56'25.000"	-29°14'30.000"	NC	V	NC1A	27	522
119	1	DVB-T2	PRIESKA	522	27	10	022°36'57.000"	-29°40'52.000"	NC	H	NC1A	27	522
120	1	DVB-T2	SPRINGBOK	522	27	10	017°48'29.000"	-29°35'04.000"	NC	H	NC1A	27	522

No.	MUX	DTT	TX-Name	Freq. (MHz)	CH	ERP (kW)	Longitude	Latitude	Province	Pol	SFN Id	CH	Freq. (MHz)
121	1	DVB-T2	UPINGTON	586	35	50	021°44'12.000"	28°52'56.000"	NC	H	NC1A	27	522
122	1	DVB-T2	UPINGTON TOWN	586	35	0.4	021°12'00.000"	28°30'25.000"	NC	V	NC1A	27	522
123	1	DVB-T2	VICTORIA WEST	498	24	0.5	023°13'50.000"	31°41'15.000"	NC	H	NC1B	24	498
124	1	DVB-T2	WILLISTON	522	27	0.1	020°55'08.000"	31°19'31.000"	NC	H	NC1A	27	522
125	1	DVB-T2	ALEXANDER BAY	522	27	0.1	016°29'49.000"	28°36'32.000"	NC	V	NC1A	27	522
126	1	DVB-T2	CALVINIA	522	27	10	019°46'57.000"	31°23'03.000"	NC	H	NC1A	27	522
127	1	DVB-T2	COLEBERG	498	24	0.5	025°03'28.000"	30°42'30.000"	NC	V	NC1B	24	498
128	1	DVB-T2	DE AAR	626	40	50	023°59'16.000"	30°27'49.000"	NC	H	NC1B	24	498
129	1	DVB-T2	DOUGLAS	522	27	10	023°31'49.000"	29°04'14.000"	NC	H	NC1A	27	522
130	1	DVB-T2	GARIES	522	27	50	018°04'43.000"	30°18'52.000"	NC	H	NC1A	27	522
131	1	DVB-T2	KIMBERLEY	474	21	68	024°54'19.000"	28°51'14.000"	NC	H	FS1	21	474
132	1	DVB-T2	KURUMAN	578	34	5	023°18'49.000"	27°21'05.000"	NC	H	NW1	34	578
133	1	DVB-T2	KURUMAN HILLS	522	27	80	023°33'38.000"	27°53'13.000"	NC	H	NC1A	27	522
134	1	DVB-T2	MOTSWEDI	578	34	7	025°52'18.000"	25°16'55.000"	NC	H	NW1	34	578
135	1	DVB-T2	PIET PLESSIS	578	34	10	024°49'55.000"	26°14'56.000"	NW	H	NW1	34	578
136	1	DVB-T2	POMFRET	578	34	20	023°34'44.000"	25°49'52.000"	NW	V	NW1	34	578
137	1	DVB-T2	RUSTENBURG	578	34	32	027°07'06.000"	25°36'56.000"	NW	H	NW1	34	578
138	1	DVB-T2	SUPINGSTAD	578	34	10	026°01'36.000"	24°47'20.000"	NW	V	NW1	34	578
139	1	DVB-T2	SWARTKOP	578	34	1	026°48'09.000"	25°40'59.000"	NW	V	NW1	34	578
140	1	DVB-T2	TAUNG	578	34	18	024°37'00.000"	27°31'30.000"	NW	H	NW1	34	578
141	1	DVB-T2	ZEERUST	578	34	63	026°02'51.000"	25°51'37.000"	NW	H	NW1	34	578
142	1	DVB-T2	SCHWEIZER RENKE	578	34	100	025°13'07.000"	27°08'13.000"	NW	H	NW1	34	578
143	1	DVB-T2	CHRISTIANA	578	34	10	024°55'50.000"	27°53'03.000"	NW	H	NW1	34	578
144	1	DVB-T2	ENZELBERG	578	34	2	026°13'16.000"	25°25'07.000"	NW	H	NW1	34	578
145	1	DVB-T2	GANYESA	578	34	61	024°16'00.000"	26°36'12.000"	NW	H	NW1	34	578
146	1	DVB-T2	GROOT MARICO	578	34	10	026°26'08.000"	25°37'11.000"	NW	V	NW1	34	578
147	1	DVB-T2	KLERKSDORP	578	34	50	026°24'29.000"	26°45'14.000"	NW	H	NW1	34	578
148	1	DVB-T2	MADIBOGO	578	34	4	025°15'14.000"	26°27'28.000"	NW	H	NW1	34	578
149	1	DVB-T2	MONTAGU	570	33	0.125	020°08'37.000"	33°47'16.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
150	1	DVB-T2	NAPIER	666	45	1	019°52'33.000"	34°31'45.000"	WC	H	WC1	33	570
151	1	DVB-T2	OUTSHOORN	570	33	100	022°16'02.000"	33°40'16.000"	WC	H	WC1	33	570
152	1	DVB-T2	PAARL	610	38	4	018°56'23.000"	33°42'51.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
153	1	DVB-T2	PIKETBERG	570	33	56	018°44'19.000"	32°49'09.000"	WC	H	WC1	33	570
154	1	DVB-T2	PLETTENBERG BAY	570	33	0.125	023°22'25.000"	34°03'34.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
155	1	DVB-T2	RIVERSDALE	666	45	160	021°07'41.000"	34°01'07.000"	WC	H	WC1	33	570
156	1	DVB-T2	SEA POINT	610	38	0.4	018°23'51.000"	33°54'33.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
157	1	DVB-T2	SIMONSTOWN	610	38	2	018°25'37.000"	34°11'54.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
158	1	DVB-T2	STELLENBOSCH	610	38	0.8	018°52'10.000"	33°54'59.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
159	1	DVB-T2	TABLE MOUNTAIN	610	38	0.6	018°24'13.000"	33°57'25.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
160	1	DVB-T2	TOUWSTADT	570	33	0.05	020°01'12.000"	33°20'59.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
161	1	DVB-T2	TYGERBERG	610	38	50	018°35'46.000"	33°52'29.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
162	1	DVB-T2	UNIONDALE	666	45	2.5	023°03'02.000"	33°43'24.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
163	1	DVB-T2	UNIONDALE TOWN	570	33	0.025	023°07'36.000"	33°38'46.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
164	1	DVB-T2	VAN RHYNSDORP	570	33	50	018°41'24.000"	31°45'16.000"	WC	H	WC1	33	570
165	1	DVB-T2	VILLIERSDORP	666	45	60	019°30'25.000"	33°58'09.000"	WC	H	WC1	33	570
166	1	DVB-T2	AURORA	610	38	0.25	018°38'29.000"	33°49'39.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
167	1	DVB-T2	BEAUFORT WEST	570	33	60	022°30'25.000"	32°15'29.000"	WC	H	WC1	33	570
168	1	DVB-T2	CAPE TOWN	610	38	50	018°23'15.000"	34°03'15.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
169	1	DVB-T2	CERES	666	45	11	019°27'32.000"	33°15'10.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
170	1	DVB-T2	CLIFTON	610	38	0.1	022°13'00.000"	34°02'31.000"	WC	H	WC1	33	570
171	1	DVB-T2	FISHHOEK	610	38	0.1	018°26'12.000"	34°08'59.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
172	1	DVB-T2	FRANSCHHOEK	570	33	2	019°04'26.000"	33°54'26.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
173	1	DVB-T2	GEORGE	570	33	34	022°22'04.000"	33°55'38.000"	WC	H	WC1	33	570
174	1	DVB-T2	GRABOUW	610	38	1	018°58'03.000"	34°06'05.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
175	1	DVB-T2	GROOT BRAKRIJVER	570	33	0.25	022°13'00.000"	34°02'31.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
176	1	DVB-T2	HERMANUS	570	33	0.6	019°13'18.000"	34°24'48.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
177	1	DVB-T2	HENRIVIER	570	33	0.1	019°39'23.000"	33°30'54.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
178	1	DVB-T2	HOUT BAY	610	38	4	018°20'56.000"	34°00'44.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
179	1	DVB-T2	KLEINMOND	570	33	2	019°08'28.000"	34°23'22.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
180	1	DVB-T2	KNYSNA	498	24	0.5	023°02'31.000"	34°04'17.000"	WC	V	WC1	33	570
181	1	DVB-T2	LADISMITH (CAPE)	570	33	10	021°25'18.000"	33°37'55.000"	WC	H	WC1	33	570
182	1	DVB-T2	NATJESFONTEIN	666	45	20	020°30'20.000"	33°16'52.000"	WC	H	WC1	33	570

**Note 1:** Freq (MHz) and CH are the frequency and associated channel number at which the service shall be implemented in order to ensure that the IMT 700 and IMT 800 frequencies in order to clear the Frequency Band after analogue switch-off.

**Note 2:** No DTT assignments are above 694 MHz.

**Note 3:** Final Frequency and the associated final channel number is the frequency at which the station will operate in the provincial SFN network.

**Note 4:** In order to create a plan with the least possible interference the large SFN's were broken up into smaller SFN's in some provinces.

**ANNEXURE B**



No.	MUX	DTT	TX-Name	Freq. (MHz)	CH	ERP (kW)	Longitude	Latitude	Province	Pol.	SFN Id	CH	Freq. (MHz)
1	2	DVB-T2	QUEENSTOWN	586	35	58	026°47'05.000"	-31°43'56.000"	EC	H	EC2	35	586
2	2	DVB-T2	GRAHAMSTOWN	586	35	65	026°42'31.000"	-33°17'15.000"	EC	H	EC2	35	586
3	2	DVB-T2	UMTATA	658	44	10	028°44'36.000"	-31°35'48.000"	EC	H	EC2	35	586
4	2	DVB-T2	KING WILLIAMS TOWN	658	44	18.02	027°15'36.000"	-32°40'44.000"	EC	H	EC2	35	586
5	2	DVB-T2	BUTTERWORTH	658	44	10	028°12'25.000"	-32°16'35.000"	EC	H	EC2	35	586
6	2	DVB-T2	PORTST JOHNS	586	35	10	029°31'39.000"	-31°46'39.000"	EC	H	EC2	35	586
7	2	DVB-T2	ALI WAL NORTH	586	35	50	026°34'00.000"	-30°47'05.000"	EC	H	EC2	35	586
8	2	DVB-T2	SURBERG	586	35	40	025°34'29.000"	-33°14'55.000"	EC	H	EC2	35	586
9	2	DVB-T2	MOUNT AYLIF	490	23	50	029°23'41.000"	-30°50'11.000"	EC	H	EC2	35	586
10	2	DVB-T2	NGANGELIZWE	586	35	0.2	028°48'31.000"	-31°37'15.000"	EC	H	EC2	35	586
11	2	DVB-T2	STIERKSPRUIT	586	35	20	027°16'14.000"	-30°41'44.000"	EC	V	EC2	35	586
12	2	DVB-T2	EAST LONDON	658	44	63	027°48'58.000"	-32°56'20.000"	EC	H	EC2	35	586
13	2	DVB-T2	PORT ELIZABETH	586	35	72	025°26'29.000"	-33°56'10.000"	EC	H	EC2	35	586
14	2	DVB-T2	PORT ELIZABETH CITY	586	35	2	025°35'29.630"	-33°55'28.000"	EC	V	EC2	35	586
15	2	DVB-T2	DESPATCH	586	35	2	025°25'29.000"	-33°45'53.000"	EC	V	EC2	35	586
16	2	DVB-T2	THE UNISSEN	682	47	34	026°34'50.000"	-28°11'55.000"	FS	H	FS2	25	506
17	2	DVB-T2	SUIDRAND (KROONSTAD)	506	25	0.25	027°14'16.000"	-27°41'18.000"	FS	V	FS2	25	506
18	2	DVB-T2	BETHLEHEM	506	25	50	028°29'58.000"	-28°14'10.000"	FS	H	FS2	25	506
19	2	DVB-T2	SENEKAL	506	25	10	027°30'26.000"	-28°15'19.000"	FS	H	FS2	25	506
20	2	DVB-T2	LADYBRAND	506	25	10	027°22'42.000"	-29°10'18.000"	FS	H	FS2	25	506
21	2	DVB-T2	BOESMANSKOP	506	25	10	027°12'55.000"	-30°00'28.000"	FS	H	FS2	25	506
22	2	DVB-T2	KROONSTAD	506	25	50	027°11'10.000"	-27°25'16.000"	FS	H	FS2	25	506
23	2	DVB-T2	PETRUS STEYN	506	25	20	028°19'06.000"	-27°30'51.000"	FS	H	FS2	25	506
24	2	DVB-T2	WITSIESHOEK	506	25	0.5	028°50'49.000"	-28°31'04.000"	FS	V	FS2	25	506
25	2	DVB-T2	BLOEMFONTEIN	506	25	100	026°13'50.000"	-29°06'13.000"	FS	H	FS2	25	506
26	2	DVB-T2	WELVERDIEND	658	44	90	027°14'55.000"	-26°26'47.000"	GP	H	GP2	44	658
27	2	DVB-T2	BEZ VALLEY	658	44	0.5	028°05'04.000"	-26°11'41.000"	GP	V	GP2	44	658
28	2	DVB-T2	HELDERKRUIJN	658	44	20	027°51'32.000"	-26°06'05.000"	GP	V	GP2	44	658
29	2	DVB-T2	JOHANNESBURG	658	44	50	028°00'26.000"	-26°11'31.000"	GP	H	GP2	44	658
30	2	DVB-T2	MENLO PARK	658	44	0.04	028°16'09.000"	-25°46'15.000"	GP	V	GP2	44	658
31	2	DVB-T2	MONDEOR	658	44	0.5	027°59'37.000"	-26°16'54.000"	GP	V	GP2	44	658
32	2	DVB-T2	MULBARTON	658	44	0.03	028°03'56.000"	-26°17'36.000"	GP	V	GP2	44	658
33	2	DVB-T2	PRETORIA	658	44	70	027°59'03.000"	-25°41'20.000"	GP	H	GP2	44	658
34	2	DVB-T2	PRETORIA NORTH	658	44	0.25	028°10'07.000"	-25°41'25.000"	GP	V	GP2	44	658
35	2	DVB-T2	SUNNYSIDE	658	44	20	028°12'24.000"	-25°45'53.000"	GP	V	GP2	44	658
36	2	DVB-T2	LINMEYER	658	44	0.1	028°04'16.000"	-26°16'08.000"	GP	V	GP2	44	658
37	2	DVB-T2	HEIDELBERG	658	44	1	028°20'53.000"	-26°29'19.000"	GP	V	GP2	44	658
38	2	DVB-T2	PORT SHEPSTONE	626	40	74	030°17'17.000"	-30°44'07.000"	KN	H	KZ2	40	626
39	2	DVB-T2	DONNY BROOK	626	40	60	029°51'19.000"	-29°54'56.000"	KN	H	KZ2	40	626
40	2	DVB-T2	NEWCASTLE	626	40	1	029°57'12.000"	-27°43'07.000"	KN	V	KZ2	40	626
41	2	DVB-T2	VRYHEID	626	40	10	030°47'38.000"	-27°44'27.000"	KN	H	KZ2	40	626
42	2	DVB-T2	GLENCOE	626	40	50	029°56'51.000"	-28°09'04.000"	KN	H	KZ2	40	626
43	2	DVB-T2	LADYSMITH	626	40	1	029°47'18.600"	-28°35'23.000"	KN	V	KZ2	40	626
44	2	DVB-T2	ESHOWE	626	40	63	031°17'37.000"	-28°51'29.000"	KN	H	KZ2	40	626
45	2	DVB-T2	UBONJO	626	40	50	032°04'52.000"	-27°33'42.000"	KN	H	KZ2	40	626
46	2	DVB-T2	KOKSTAD	626	40	0.4	029°29'24.000"	-30°36'42.000"	KN	V	KZ2	40	626
47	2	DVB-T2	PONGOLA	626	40	1.5	031°39'00.000"	-27°31'34.000"	KN	V	KZ2	40	626
48	2	DVB-T2	EMPANGENI	626	40	0.25	031°53'31.000"	-28°44'38.000"	KN	V	KZ2	40	626
49	2	DVB-T2	GREY TOWN	626	40	10	030°32'10.000"	-29°00'46.000"	KN	H	KZ2	40	626
50	2	DVB-T2	MATATIELE	682	47	10	028°49'19.000"	-30°23'45.000"	KN	H	KZ2	40	626



No.	MUX	DIT	TX-Name	Freq. (MHz)	CH	ERP (kW)	Longitude	Latitude	Province	Pol	SF N Id	CH	Freq. (MHz)
51	2	DVB-T2	MOOI RIVIER	626	40	10	029°52'04.000"	-29°11'07.000"	KN	H	KZ2	40	626
52	2	DVB-T2	NONGOMA	626	40	10	031°39'27.000"	-27°54'18.000"	KN	H	KZ2	40	626
53	2	DVB-T2	PIETERMARITZBURG	626	40	20	030°19'49.000"	-29°34'47.000"	KN	V	KZ2	40	626
54	2	DVB-T2	DURBAN	626	40	100	030°43'00.000"	-29°46'11.000"	KN	H	KZ2	40	626
55	2	DVB-T2	VERULAM	626	40	0.01	031°02'19.000"	-29°38'25.000"	KN	V	KZ2	40	626
56	2	DVB-T2	OVERPORT	626	40	26	030°59'44.000"	-29°50'12.000"	KN	V	KZ2	40	626
57	2	DVB-T2	THE BLUFF	626	40	2.5	031°00'44.060"	-29°54'40.880"	KN	V	KZ2	40	626
58	2	DVB-T2	THABAZIMBI	570	33	33	027°36'51.000"	-24°27'59.000"	L	H	LP2A	33	570
59	2	DVB-T2	LOUIS TRICHARDT	546	30	23	029°45'26.000"	-23°00'02.000"	L	V	LP2B	30	546
60	2	DVB-T2	TZANEEN	546	30	80	030°00'17.000"	-23°47'08.000"	L	H	LP2B	30	546
61	2	DVB-T2	SIBASA	546	30	16	030°26'54.000"	-22°56'57.000"	L	V	LP2B	30	546
62	2	DVB-T2	POTGIETERSRUS	546	30	62	029°14'10.000"	-24°09'24.000"	L	H	LP2B	30	546
63	2	DVB-T2	HOEDSPRUIT	554	31	10	030°52'08.000"	-24°32'30.000"	L	H	MP2	554	31
64	2	DVB-T2	VOLKSRUST	642	42	15	029°53'14.630"	-27°18'36.000"	MP	H	MP2	554	31
65	2	DVB-T2	PIET RETIEF	554	31	76	030°41'03.000"	-27°01'11.000"	MP	H	MP2	554	31
66	2	DVB-T2	DAVEL	522	27	50	029°37'26.000"	-26°27'30.000"	MP	H	MP2	554	31
67	2	DVB-T2	SABIE	554	31	0.1	030°45'34.000"	-25°07'44.000"	MP	V	MP2	554	31
68	2	DVB-T2	STANDERTON	554	31	0.25	029°12'51.000"	-26°57'37.000"	MP	V	MP2	554	31
69	2	DVB-T2	CAROLINA	554	31	10	030°37'57.000"	-26°10'37.000"	MP	H	MP2	554	31
70	2	DVB-T2	NELSPRUIT	554	31	76	030°46'35.000"	-25°30'55.000"	MP	H	MP2	554	31
71	2	DVB-T2	MIDDELBURG	554	31	50	029°23'24.000"	-25°49'04.000"	MP	H	MP2	554	31
72	2	DVB-T2	KURUMAN HILLS	554	31	80	023°33'38.000"	-27°53'13.000"	NC	H	NC2A	554	31
73	2	DVB-T2	ALEXANDER BAY	554	31	0.1	016°29'49.000"	-28°36'32.000"	NC	V	NC2A	554	31
74	2	DVB-T2	KIMBERLEY	506	25	68	024°54'19.000"	-28°51'14.000"	NC	H	FS2	506	25
75	2	DVB-T2	CHRISTIANA	674	46	10	024°55'50.000"	-27°53'03.000"	NW	H	NW2	674	46
76	2	DVB-T2	ZEERUST	674	46	63	026°02'51.000"	-25°51'37.000"	NW	H	NW2	674	46
77	2	DVB-T2	SCHWEIZER RENEKE	674	46	100	025°13'07.000"	-27°08'13.000"	NW	H	NW2	674	46
78	2	DVB-T2	PIET PLESSIS	674	46	10	024°49'55.000"	-26°14'56.000"	NW	H	NW2	674	46
79	2	DVB-T2	RUSTENBURG	674	46	32	027°07'06.000"	-25°56'56.000"	NW	H	NW2	674	46
80	2	DVB-T2	PIKETBERG	610	38	56.1	018°44'19.000"	-32°49'09.000"	WC	H	WC2	538	29
81	2	DVB-T2	ODUTSHOORN	634	41	100	022°16'02.000"	-33°40'16.000"	WC	H	WC2	538	29
82	2	DVB-T2	VILLIERSDORP	634	41	60	019°30'25.000"	-33°58'09.000"	WC	H	WC2	538	29
83	2	DVB-T2	BEAUFORT WEST	538	29	60	022°30'25.000"	-32°15'29.000"	WC	H	WC2	538	29
84	2	DVB-T2	GEORGE	538	29	34	022°27'04.000"	-33°55'38.000"	WC	H	WC2	538	29
85	2	DVB-T2	PLETTENBERG BAY	538	29	0.125	023°22'25.000"	-34°03'34.000"	WC	V	WC2	538	29
86	2	DVB-T2	HERMANUS	538	29	0.603	019°13'18.000"	-34°24'47.000"	WC	V	WC2	538	29
87	2	DVB-T2	KNYSNA	538	29	0.501	023°02'31.000"	-34°04'17.000"	WC	V	WC2	538	29
88	2	DVB-T2	FRANSCHHOEK	538	29	2	019°04'26.000"	-33°54'26.000"	WC	V	WC2	538	29
89	2	DVB-T2	TYGERBERG	538	29	50	018°35'46.000"	-33°52'29.000"	WC	V	WC2	538	29
90	2	DVB-T2	AURORA	538	29	0.25	018°38'29.000"	-33°49'39.000"	WC	V	WC2	538	29
91	2	DVB-T2	CAPE TOWN	538	29	50	018°23'15.000"	-34°03'15.000"	WC	H	WC2	538	29
92	2	DVB-T2	CLIFTON	538	29	0.1	018°22'37.000"	-33°56'30.000"	WC	H	WC2	538	29
93	2	DVB-T2	FISHHOEK	538	29	0.1	018°26'12.000"	-34°08'59.000"	WC	V	WC2	538	29
94	2	DVB-T2	GRABOUW	538	29	1	018°58'03.000"	-34°06'05.000"	WC	V	WC2	538	29
95	2	DVB-T2	HOUT BAY	538	29	4	018°20'56.000"	-34°00'44.000"	WC	V	WC2	538	29
96	2	DVB-T2	PAARL	538	29	20	018°56'23.000"	-33°42'51.000"	WC	V	WC2	538	29
97	2	DVB-T2	SEA POINT	538	29	0.4	018°23'51.000"	-33°54'33.000"	WC	V	WC2	538	29
98	2	DVB-T2	SIMONSTOWN	538	29	2	018°23'37.000"	-34°11'54.000"	WC	V	WC2	538	29
99	2	DVB-T2	STELLENBOSCH	538	29	0.8	018°52'10.000"	-33°54'59.000"	WC	V	WC2	538	29
100	2	DVB-T2	TABLE MOUNTAIN	538	29	0.6	018°24'13.000"	-33°57'25.000"	WC	V	WC2	538	29

**Note 1:** Freq (MHz) and CH are the frequency and associated channel number at which the service shall be implemented in order to ensure that the IMT 700 and IMT 800 frequencies in order to clear the Frequency Band after analogue switch-off.

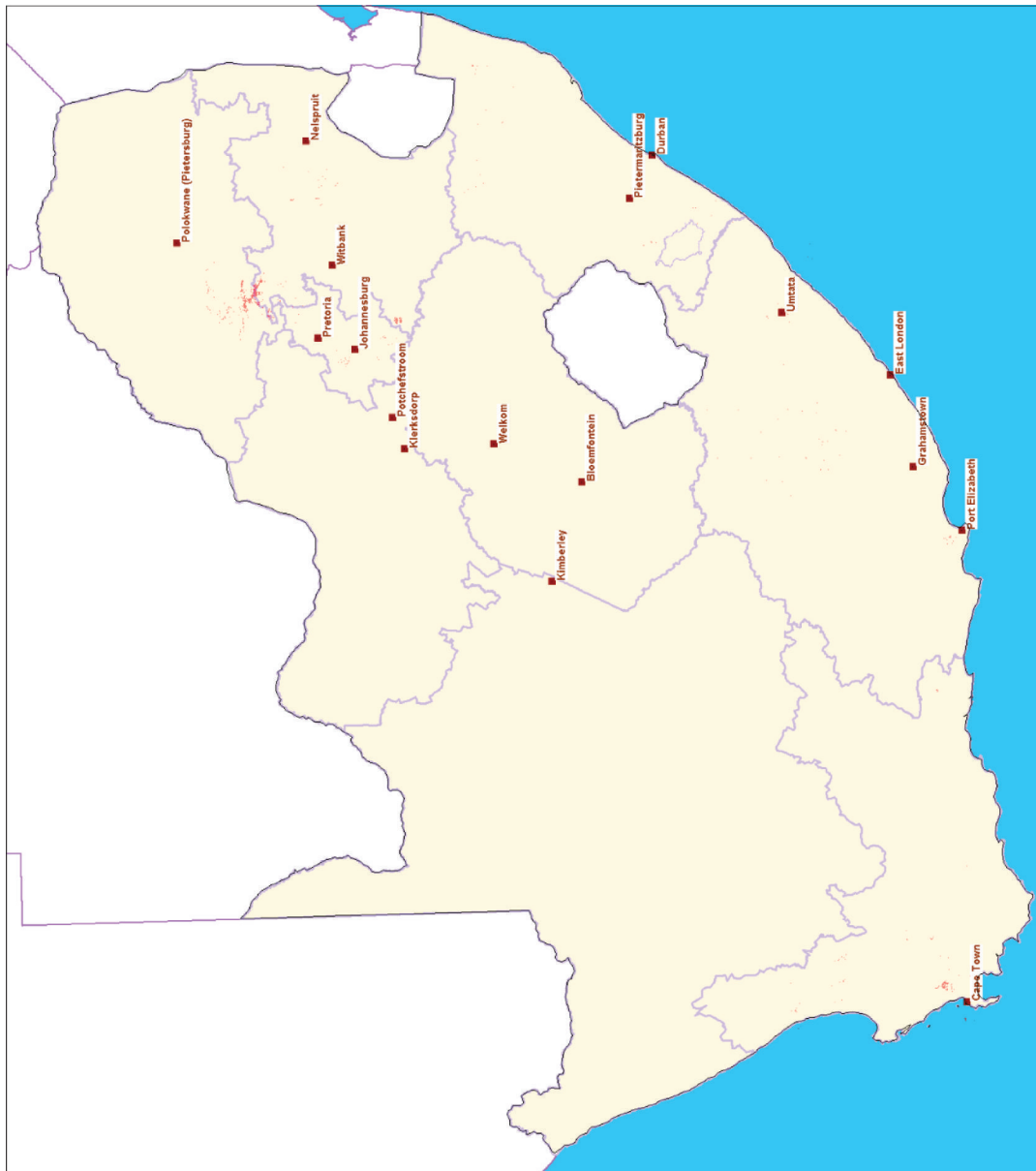
**Note 2:** No DTT assignments are above 694 MHz.

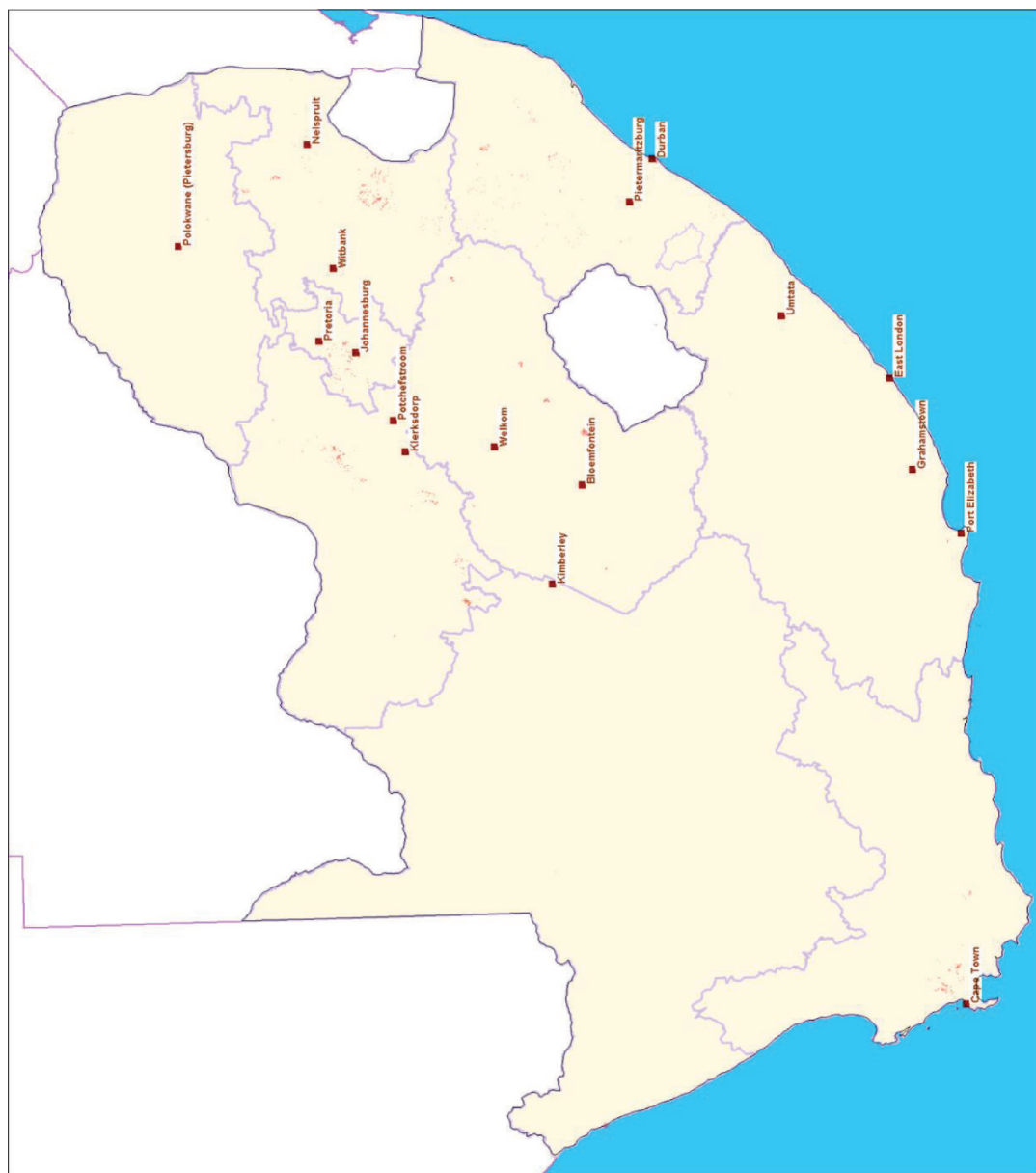
**Note 3:** Final Frequency and the associated final channel number is the frequency at which the station will operate in the provincial SFN network.

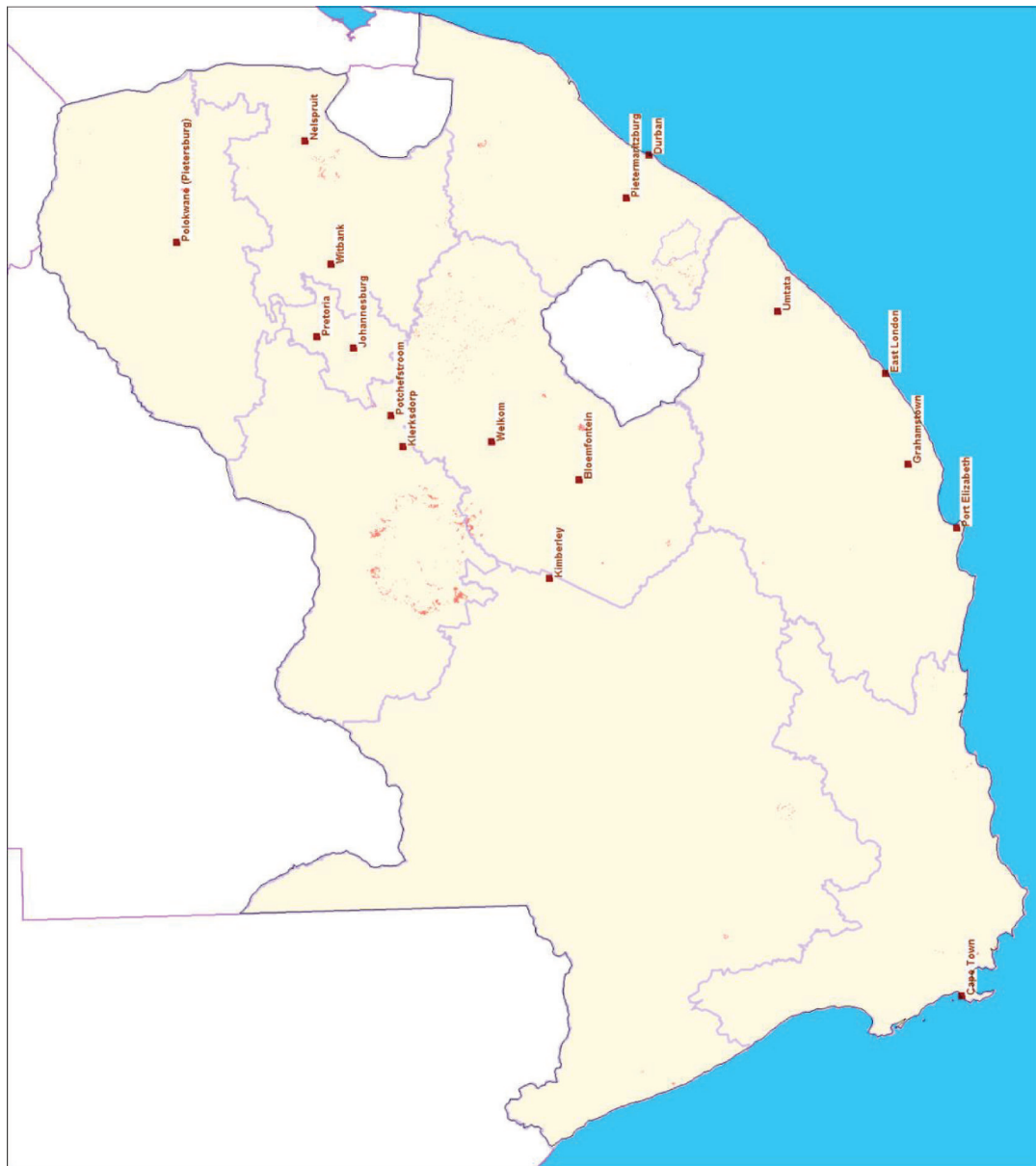
**Note 4:** In order to create a plan with the least possible interference the large SFN's were broken up into smaller SFN's in some provinces.

**ANNEXURE C**

## Interference Results for etv (Red areas)



**Interference Results for SABC1 (Red areas)**

**Interference Results for SABC 2 (Red areas)**

**Interference Results for SABC 3 (Red areas)**



DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE AND CONSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT  
NOTICE 637 OF 2019

**PROMOTION OF ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT, 2000**

**DESCRIPTION SUBMITTED IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)**

I, Ronald Lamola, Minister of Justice and Correctional Services, hereby publish under section 15(2) of the Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act No. 2 of 2000), the descriptions submitted to me in terms of section 15(1) of the said Act by the –

**WESTERN CAPE PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENT**

As set out in the Schedule



**MR RONALD LAMOLA, MP**

**MINISTER FOR JUSTICE AND CORRECTIONAL SERVICES**

**1. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE**

<b>DESCRIPTION OF CATEGORIES OF RECORDS AUTOMATICALLY AVAILABLE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1) OF THE PROMOTION OF ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT, 2000</b>	<b>MANNER OF ACCESS TO RECORDS</b>
<b>FOR INSPECTION IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(i)</b>	
(a) Annual Reports (b) 5 Year Strategic Plans (c) Organisational Structure (d) Citizen's Report (e) Service Delivery Charter (f) Annual Performance Plan (g) Budget: Estimates and Revenue and Expenditure for the Department for 2018/2019	These records are for inspection from the Agriculture Branch, Private Bag X1, Muldersvlei Road, Elsenburg It is also available on the Departmental Website: <a href="http://www.elsenburg.com">www.elsenburg.com</a> (f) to (g). Available from Provincial Treasury as contained in the Budget: Estimates of Provincial Revenue & Expenditure – 15 Wale Street, Cape Town
<b>FOR COPYING OR PURCHASING IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(ii)</b>	
(a) Annual Reports (b) 5 Year Strategic Plans (c) Organisational Structure (d) Citizen's Report (e) Service Delivery Charter	Copies of these records are available for purchasing and copying, after payment of the prescribed fees at the Agriculture Branch, Private Bag X1, Muldersvlei Road, Elsenburg It is also available on the Departmental Website: <a href="http://www.elsenburg.com">www.elsenburg.com</a>
<b>AVAILABLE FREE OF CHARGE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(iii)</b>	
(a) Brochures on agriculture-related subjects (b) Publications, Pamphlets, Newsletters, posters (c) All information on the website	Copies of these records are available free of charge from the Agriculture Branch, Private Bag X1, Muldersvlei Road, Elsenburg The following information is available for download on the website free of charge: ( <a href="http://www.elsenburg.com">www.elsenburg.com</a> ): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– About the Department</li> <li>– Events</li> <li>– Media</li> <li>– Radio Elsenburg</li> <li>– Events Calendar</li> <li>– Services</li> <li>– Research Development</li> <li>– Agricultural Development Centres</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Information Sheets</li> <li>– Elsenburg College</li> </ul>
--	---

## 2. DEPARTMENT OF CULTURAL AFFAIRS AND SPORT

DESCRIPTION OF CATEGORIES OF RECORDS AUTOMATICALLY AVAILABLE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1) OF THE PROMOTION OF ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT, 2000	MANNER OF ACCESS TO RECORDS
FOR INSPECTION IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(i)	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) "Step-by-Step to project execution" document of the Museum Service</li> <li>(b) Two-monthly in-house magazine "the Cape Librarian"</li> <li>(c) Annual report of the Western Cape Library Service</li> <li>(d) Event Strategy of the Province</li> <li>(e) HIV and AIDS Strategy of the Department</li> <li>(f) Strategic Plan</li> <li>(g) Service Delivery Improvement Plan</li> <li>(h) Annual Performance Plans</li> <li>(i) Annual Reports</li> <li>(j) Annual Reports to Citizens</li> <li>(k) Service Charters</li> <li>(l) Western Cape Department of Cultural Affairs and Sport Budget Speech</li> <li>(m) Department of Cultural Affairs and Sport: Organogram</li> <li>(n) Norms and Standards for Western Cape Public Libraries</li> <li>(o) Contact list for Western Cape Public Libraries</li> </ul>	<p>These records referred are available for inspection at the Department of Cultural Affairs and Sport, Protea Assurance Building, Greenmarket Square, Cape Town.</p>
FOR COPYING OR PURCHASING IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(ii)	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) "Step-by-Step to project execution" document of the Museum Service</li> <li>(b) Two-monthly in-house magazine "the Cape Librarian"</li> <li>(c) Annual report of the Western Cape Library Service</li> <li>(d) Events Strategy for the Province</li> <li>(e) HIV and AIDS Strategy of the Department</li> <li>(f) Strategic Plan</li> <li>(g) Service Delivery Improvement Plan</li> <li>(h) Annual Performance Plans</li> <li>(i) Annual Reports</li> <li>(j) Annual Reports to Citizens</li> </ul>	<p>Records referred to (a) to (m) in are available for copying and purchasing, after payment of the prescribed fee at the Department of Cultural Affairs and Sport, Protea Assurance Building, Greenmarket Square, Cape Town.</p>

(k) Service Charters (l) Western Cape Department of Cultural Affairs and Sport Budget Speech (m) Department of Cultural Affairs and Sport: Organogram (n) Norms and Standards for Western Cape Public Libraries (o) Contact list for Western Cape Public Libraries	
<b>AVAILABLE FREE OF CHARGE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(iii)</b>	
(a) Two-monthly in-house magazine "the Cape Librarian" (b) Service Delivery Improvement Plan (c) Annual Performance Plans (d) Annual Reports (e) Annual Reports to Citizens (f) Service Charters (g) Strategic Plan (h) Western Cape Department of Cultural Affairs and Sport Budget Speech (i) Department of Cultural Affairs and Sport: Organogram	These are available for download from the WCG portal at <a href="https://www.westerncape.gov.za/dept/cas">https://www.westerncape.gov.za/dept/cas</a> , free of charge

### 3. DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS AND DEVELOPMENT PLANNING

<b>DESCRIPTION OF CATEGORIES OF RECORDS AUTOMATICALLY AVAILABLE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1) OF THE PROMOTION OF ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT, 2000</b>	<b>MANNER OF ACCESS TO RECORDS</b>
<b>FOR INSPECTION IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(i)</b>	
Authorisations / permits and licenses and decisions:- (a) Environmental Authorisations issued in terms of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations; (b) Licenses issued in terms of the NEM: Waste Act; (c) Atmospheric Emission Licenses issued in terms of the NEM: Air Quality Act (d) Environmental Authorisations issued in terms of section 24G of NEMA (e) Decisions in terms of section 43 NEMA (f) Decisions in terms of section 54 of Western Cape Land Use Planning Act, 2014 (Act No. 3 of 2014) (g) Directives issued in terms of section 28 of NEMA	Records referred to in (a) to (f) are available for inspection at the Head of Department, 1 Dorp Street, Cape Town - between 08:00 and 15:00  Note: i) <i>The release of the abovementioned documents, together with all relevant supporting documentation, will be subject to compliance with</i>

<p>(h) Compliance Notices issued in terms of section 31L of NEMA</p>	<p><i>section 15(4) of PAIA, wherein certain portions may be redacted, and where relevant, will be released in the same form as they were published during public participation process.</i></p> <p><i>ii) Certain sub categories may not be accessible in their entirety on grounds stated in Chapter 4 of PAIA</i></p> <p><i>iii) The Department shall delete any part of a record listed which must be refused in terms of Chapter 4 of PAIA as per section 15(4) of PAIA</i></p>
<p><b>FOR COPYING OR PURCHASING IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(ii)</b></p>	
<p>Authorisations / permits and licenses and decisions:-</p> <p>(a) Environmental Authorisations issued in terms of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations;</p> <p>(b) Licenses issued in terms of the NEM: Waste Act;</p> <p>(c) Atmospheric Emission Licenses issued in terms of the NEM: Air Quality Act</p> <p>(d) Environmental Authorisations issued in terms of section 24G of NEMA</p> <p>(e) Decisions in terms of section 43 NEMA</p> <p>(f) Decisions in terms of section 54 of Western Cape Land Use Planning Act, 2014 (Act No. 3 of 2014)</p> <p>(g) Directives issued in terms of section 28 of NEMA</p> <p>(h) Compliance Notices issued in terms of section 31L of NEMA</p>	<p>Records referred to in (a) to (f) are available for copying and purchase at the Head of Department, 1 Dorp Street, Cape Town - between 08:00 and 15:00</p> <p>Note:</p> <p><i>i) The release of the abovementioned documents, together with all relevant supporting documentation, will be subject to compliance with section 15(4) of PAIA, wherein certain portions may be redacted, and where relevant, will be released in the same form as they were published during public participation process.</i></p>

	<p>ii) <i>Certain sub categories may not be accessible in their entirety on grounds stated in Chapter 4 of PAIA</i></p> <p>iii) <i>The Department shall delete any part of a record listed which must be refused in terms of Chapter 4 of PAIA as per section 15(4) of PAIA</i></p>
<b>AVAILABLE FREE OF CHARGE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(iii)</b>	
<p>(a) The Departmental Calendar of Events</p> <p>(b) Policy and legislation</p> <p>(c) Departmental Annual Performance Reports</p> <p>(d) Departmental Annual Performance Plans</p> <p>(e) Departmental Strategic Plans</p> <p>(f) News Releases</p> <p>(g) Circulars and Guidelines</p>	<p>Documents that are available for download from the WCG portal at <a href="http://www.westerncape.gov.za/eadp">http://www.westerncape.gov.za/eadp</a>, free of charge</p>

#### 4. **DEPARTMENT OF ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT AND TOURISM**

<b>DESCRIPTION OF CATEGORIES OF RECORDS AUTOMATICALLY AVAILABLE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1) OF THE PROMOTION OF ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT, 2000</b>	<b>MANNER OF ACCESS TO RECORDS</b>
<b>FOR INSPECTION IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(i)</b>	
<p><u>Economic Enablement, Economic Sector Support, Business Regulation and Governance, Economic Planning, Tourism, Arts and Entertainment, Skills Development</u></p> <p>(a) Annual Reports</p> <p>(b) Financial Statements</p> <p>(c) Budget Report</p> <p><u>Integrated Economic Development Services, Trade and Sector Development, Business Regulation and Governance, Economic Planning, Tourism, Commercial Arts and Entertainment</u></p> <p>(a) Brochures: Small Business Development</p>	<p>These records are available for inspection at the Sub-Directorate: Strategic and Operational Support 11<sup>th</sup> Floor, Waldorf Building, St George's Mall, Cape Town – between 08:00 and 15:45</p> <p>These records are available for inspection at the Sub-Directorate: Strategic and Operational Support, 11<sup>th</sup> Floor, Waldorf Building, St George's</p>



<p><b><u>Head of Department</u></b></p> <p>(a) Annual Performance Plan: Overview of year Projections for following year</p> <p>(b) Annual Reports</p> <p>(c) Annual Performance Plans</p> <p>(d) 5 Year Strategic Plans</p> <p>(e) Service delivery implementation plan</p> <p><b>Chief Directorate Finance</b></p> <p><b>Finances Input:</b></p> <p>(a) Annual reports including the report of the Auditor-General, and annual audited financial statements</p> <p>(b) Western Cape Budget Speech</p> <p>(c) Medium Term Budget Policy Statement</p> <p>(d) Overview of Provincial Revenue and Expenditure</p> <p>(e) Western Cape Adjusted Estimates of Provincial Expenditure</p> <p>(f) Western Cape Adjustments Appropriation Bill</p> <p>(g) Western Cape Appropriation Bill</p> <p>(h) Western Cape Budget: Estimates of Provincial Revenue and Expenditure</p> <p>(i) Central Supplier Database</p> <p>(j) Advertised and Awarded Bids</p> <p>(k) Bid Proposal Recieved</p> <p>(l) Bids Advertised and Awarded</p> <p>(m) How to Tender: General Information</p> <p>(n) Anti-corruption awareness</p>	<p>Mall, Cape Town – between 08:00 and 15:45</p> <p>These records are available for inspection at the Sub-Directorate: Strategic and Operational Support, 11<sup>th</sup> Floor, Waldorf Building, St George's Mall, Cape Town – between 08:00 and 15:45</p> <p>These Financial documents are available for inspection at the Chief Directorate: Finance, 9th Floor, Waldorf Building, St George's Mall, Cape Town – between 08:00 and 15:00pm. It is also available on the western cape government website at <a href="https://www.westerncape.gov.za/">https://www.westerncape.gov.za/</a></p>
<b>FOR COPYING OR PURCHASING IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(ii)</b>	
<p><u>Economic Enablement, Economic Sector Support, Business Regulation and Governance, Economic Planning, Tourism, Arts and Entertainment, Skills Development</u></p> <p>(a) Annual Reports</p> <p>(b) Financial Statements</p> <p>(c) Budget Report</p>	<p>These records are available for copying and purchase at the Sub-Directorate: Strategic and Operational Support 11<sup>th</sup> Floor, Waldorf Building, St George's all, Cape Town – between 08:00 and 15:45</p>



Integrated Economic Development Services, Trade and Sector Development, Business Regulation and Governance, Economic Planning, Tourism, Commercial Arts and Entertainment

(a) Brochures:

Small Business Development

**Head of Department**

(a) Annual Performance Plan:

Overview of year

Projections for following year

(b) Annual Reports

(c) Annual Performance Plans

(d) 5 Year Strategic Plans

(e) Service delivery implementation plan

**Chief Directorate Finance**

**Finances Input:**

(a) Annual reports including the report of the Auditor-General, and annual audited financial statements

(b) Western Cape Budget Speech

(c) Medium Term Budget Policy Statement

(d) Overview of Provincial Revenue and Expenditure

(e) Western Cape Adjusted Estimates of Provincial Expenditure

(f) Western Cape Adjustments Appropriation Bill

(g) Western Cape Appropriation Bill

(h) Western Cape Budget: Estimates of Provincial Revenue and Expenditure

(i) Central Supplier Database

(j) Advertised and Awarded Bids

(k) Bid Proposal Received

(l) Bids Advertised and Awarded

(m) How to Tender: General Information

(n) Anti-corruption awareness

These records are available for copying and purchase at the Sub-Directorate: Strategic and Operational Support, 11<sup>th</sup> Floor, Waldorf Building, St George's

These records are available for copying and purchase at the Sub-Directorate: Strategic and Operational Support, 11<sup>th</sup> Floor, Waldorf Building, St George's Mall, Cape Town – between 08:00 and 15:45

These Financial documents are available for copying and purchase at the Chief Directorate: Finance, 9<sup>th</sup> Floor, Waldorf Building, St George's Mall, Cape Town – between 08:00 and 15:00pm. It is also available on the western cape government website at <https://www.westerncape.gov.za/>

**AVAILABLE FREE OF CHARGE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(iii)****Head of Department**

- (a) Annual Reports
- (b) Annual Performance Plans
- (c) 5 Year Strategic Plans

These records are available free of charge at the Sub-Directorate: Strategic and Operational Support, 11<sup>th</sup> Floor, Waldorf Building, St George's Mall, Cape Town – between 08:00 and 15:45

**Chief Directorate Finance****Finances Input:**

- (a) Annual reports including the report of the Auditor-General, and annual audited financial statements
- (b) Western Cape Budget Speech
- (c) Medium Term Budget Policy Statement
- (d) (Overview of Provincial Revenue and Expenditure
- (e) Western Cape Adjusted Estimates of Provincial Expenditure
- (f) Western Cape Adjustments Appropriation Bill
- (g) Western Cape Appropriation Bill
- (h) Western Cape Budget: Estimates of Provincial Revenue and Expenditure
- (i) Central Supplier Database
- (j) Advertised and Awarded Bids
- (k) Bid Proposal Received
- (l) Bids Advertised and Awarded
- (m) How to Tender: General Information
- (n) Anti-corruption awareness

These Financial documents are available for downloading on the western cape government website at <https://www.westerncape.gov.za/> free of charge

**5. DEPARTMENT OF LOCAL GOVERNMENT**

**DESCRIPTION OF CATEGORIES OF RECORDS  
AUTOMATICALLY AVAILABLE IN TERMS OF  
SECTION 15(1) OF THE PROMOTION OF ACCESS  
TO INFORMATION ACT, 2000**

**MANNER OF ACCESS TO  
RECORDS**

**FOR INSPECTION IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(i)**

(a) Western Cape Provincial Legislation (b) Budget (c) Departmental Strategic Plan (d) Annual Performance Plan (e) Citizens Report	These records are available for inspection at the Office of the Head of Department, Waldorf Building, 80 St Georges Mall, 8 <sup>th</sup> Floor, Cape Town - between 08:00 and 15:00
<b>FOR COPYING OR PURCHASING IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(ii)</b>	
(a) Annual reports of the Department Local Government (b) Provincial Disaster Management Framework (c) Provincial Disaster Management Strategic Plan (d) Provincial Disaster Risk and Vulnerability Assessment (e) Risk and development annual review (RADAR) (f) Guidelines to draft a Disaster Management Chapter in a municipal Integrated Development Plan (g) Western Cape Government Provincial Gazettes	These records are available after obtaining the payment of the prescribed fee from the Record Manager, Waldorf building, 7th floor, Private Bag X9076, Cape Town - between 08:00 and 15:00
<b>AVAILABLE FREE OF CHARGE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(iii)</b>	
(a) Annual Performance Plan (b) Citizens Report (c) Annual reports of the Department Local Government  (d) Western Cape Government Provincial Gazettes	<p>These records are available for download from the WCG portal at <a href="https://www.westerncape.gov.za/dept/local-government">https://www.westerncape.gov.za/dept/local-government</a> free of charge</p> <p>These records are available free of charge when downloaded from the website: <a href="https://www.westerncape.gov.za/general-publication/provincial-gazettes-2017">https://www.westerncape.gov.za/general-publication/provincial-gazettes-2017</a></p>

## 6. DEPARTMENT OF COMMUNITY SAFETY

DESCRIPTION OF CATEGORIES OF RECORDS AUTOMATICALLY AVAILABLE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1) OF THE PROMOTION OF ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT, 2000	MANNER OF ACCESS TO RECORDS
<b>FOR INSPECTION IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(i)</b>	

(a) Annual Report (b) Strategic Plan (c) Annual Performance Plan (d) Policing Needs and Priorities (PNPs) (e) Organisational structure (f) Service Delivery Improvement Plan (g) Quarterly Performance Report (h) Western Cape Community Safety Act, 3 of 2013	These records are available for inspection from the Department of Community Safety, PO Box 5346, 4 <sup>th</sup> Floor, Open Plan, 35 Wale Street, Cape Town.
<b>FOR COPYING OR PURCHASING IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(ii)</b>	
(a) Annual Report (b) Strategic Plan (c) Annual Performance Plan (d) Policing Needs and Priorities (PNPs) (e) Organisational structure (f) Service Delivery Improvement Plan (g) Quarterly Performance Report (h) Western Cape Community Safety Act, 2013 (Act 3 of 2013)	These records are available for copying and purchasing, after payment of the prescribed fee, from the Department of Community Safety, PO Box 5346, 4 <sup>th</sup> Floor, Open Plan, 35 Wale Street, Cape Town.
<b>AVAILABLE FREE OF CHARGE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(iii)</b>	
(a) Annual Report (b) Strategic Plan (c) Annual Performance Plan (d) Policing Needs and Priorities (PNPs) (e) Organisational structure (f) Service Delivery Improvement Plan (SDIP) (g) Western Cape Community Safety Act, 2013 (Act 3 of 2013) (h) Quarterly Performance Report	(a) – (h) Electronic copies of these records are available for download on the Department of Community Safety's website free of charge: <a href="http://www.westerncape.gov.za/dept/community-safety">www.westerncape.gov.za/dept/community-safety</a>  (h) Electronic copies of these records are available on the Western Cape Government website: <a href="https://www.westerncape.gov.za/general-publication/quarterly-performance-reporting-qpr">https://www.westerncape.gov.za/general-publication/quarterly-performance-reporting-qpr</a>

## 7. DEPARTMENT OF HUMAN SETTLEMENTS

DESCRIPTION OF CATEGORIES OF RECORDS AUTOMATICALLY AVAILABLE IN TERMS OF	MANNER OF ACCESS TO RECORDS
---	--------------------------------

<b>SECTION 15(1) OF THE PROMOTION OF ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT, 2000</b>	
<b>FOR INSPECTION IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(i)</b>	
(a) Allocation of Tenders (b) Approved housing policy documents (c) Provincial Housing legislation (d) Circular minutes on housing (e) Subsidy application forms (f) Lists of project applications received (g) Lists of housing projects under construction (h) Western Cape Housing Development Board resolutions (only to parties involved) (i) Subsidy beneficiary details (only parties involved) (j) Budget speech (k) Regulations published in terms of the Rental Housing Act, 1999 (Act 50 of 1999) (l) Case files of the housing tribunal (content only to parties involved) (m) Findings of Rental Housing Tribunal (n) Rental Housing Tribunal hearing recordings (content only to the parties involved) (o) Debtor accounts (content only to the parties involved) (p) Annual reports of the Department of Human Settlements (q) Annual reports of the Western Cape Rental Housing Tribunal (r) Strategic Plan (s) Budget (Gazetted) (t) Provincial policy documents (u) Western Cape Rental Housing Strategy	Records referred to in (a) to (u) are available for inspection at the Office of the Records Manager, 27 Wale Street, Cape Town - between 08:00 and 15:45.
<b>FOR COPYING OR PURCHASING IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(ii)</b>	
(a) Allocation of Tenders (b) Approved housing policy documents (c) Provincial Housing legislation (d) Circular minutes on housing (e) Subsidy application forms (f) Lists of project applications received (g) Lists of housing projects under construction (h) Western Cape Housing Development Board resolutions (only to parties involved)	Records referred to in (a) to (u) are available for copying and purchasing, after payment of the prescribed fee, at the Office of the Records Manager, 27 Wale Street, Cape Town - between 08:00 and 15:45

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Subsidy beneficiary details (only parties involved)</li> <li>(j) Budget speech</li> <li>(k) Regulations published in terms of the Rental Housing Act, 1999 (Act 50 of 1999)</li> <li>(l) Case files of the housing tribunal (content only to parties involved)</li> <li>(m) Findings of Rental Housing Tribunal</li> <li>(n) Rental Housing Tribunal hearing recordings (content only to the parties involved)</li> <li>(o) Debtor accounts (content only to the parties involved)</li> <li>(p) Annual reports of the Department of Human Settlements</li> <li>(q) Annual reports of the Western Cape Rental Housing Tribunal</li> <li>(r) Strategic Plan</li> <li>(s) Budget (Gazetted)</li> <li>(t) Provincial policy documents</li> <li>(u) Western Cape Rental Housing Strategy</li> </ul>	
<b>AVAILABLE FREE OF CHARGE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(iii)</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Subsidy application forms</li> <li>(b) Budget speech</li> <li>(c) Regulations published in terms of the Rental Housing Act, 1999 (Act 50 of 1999)</li> <li>(d) Annual reports of the Department of Human Settlements</li> <li>(e) Annual reports of the Western Cape Rental Housing Tribunal</li> <li>(f) Strategic Plan</li> <li>(g) Provincial policy documents</li> </ul>	<p>Documents that are available for download from the WCG portal at <a href="https://www.westerncape.gov.za/dept/human-settlements">https://www.westerncape.gov.za/dept/human-settlements</a>, free of charge</p>

## 8. DEPARTMENT OF THE PREMIER

DESCRIPTION OF CATEGORIES OF RECORDS AUTOMATICALLY AVAILABLE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1) OF THE PROMOTION OF ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT, 2000	MANNER OF ACCESS TO RECORDS
<b>FOR INSPECTION IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(i)</b>	

<p>(a) Register in terms of regulation 7(1) of the Executive Ethics Code (published in terms of Proclamation 41 of July 2000 of Ethics Act 1998 (see regulation 7(5))</p> <p>(b) International cooperation agreements</p> <p>(c) Annual Reports</p> <p>(d) Annual Performance Plans</p> <p>(e) 5 Year Strategic Plans</p> <p>(f) The training prospectus</p> <p>(g) Organisational Structure</p> <p>(h) Service delivery implementation plan</p> <p>(i) Job descriptions</p>	<p>Records referred to in (a) to (e) are available for inspection at the Office of the Director-General, 15 Wale Street, Cape Town - between 08:00 and 15:00</p> <p>Records referred to in (f) to (i) are available for inspection at the Office of the Chief-Director, Organisational Development, 9<sup>th</sup> Floor, Golden Acre Building, Cape Town - between 08:00 and 15:00</p>
<b>FOR COPYING OR PURCHASING IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(ii)</b>	
<p>(a) Register in terms of regulation 7(1) of the Executive Ethics Code (published in terms of Proclamation 41 of July 2000 of Ethics Act 1998 (see regulation 7(5))</p> <p>(b) International cooperation agreements</p> <p>(c) Annual Reports</p> <p>(d) Annual Performance Plans</p> <p>(e) 5 Year Strategic Plans</p> <p>(f) The training prospectus</p> <p>(g) Organisational Structure</p> <p>(h) Service delivery implementation plan</p> <p>(i) Job descriptions</p>	<p>Records referred to in (a) to (e) are available for copying and purchasing at the Office of the Director-General, 15 Wale Street, Cape Town - between 08:00 and 15:00</p> <p>Records referred to in (f) to (i) are available for copying and purchasing at the Office of the Chief-Director, Organisational Development, 9<sup>th</sup> Floor, Golden Acre Building, Cape Town - between 08:00 and 15:00</p>
<b>AVAILABLE FREE OF CHARGE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(iii)</b>	
<p>(a) Western Cape Government Provincial Gazettes</p> <p>(b) Service delivery implementation plan</p> <p>(c) International cooperation agreements</p> <p>(d) Annual Reports</p> <p>(e) Annual Performance Plans</p> <p>(f) 5 Year Strategic Plans</p> <p>(g) Organisational Structure</p>	<p>The records listed in (a) are free of charge when downloaded from:  <a href="https://www.westerncape.gov.za/general-publication/provincial-gazettes-2016">https://www.westerncape.gov.za/general-publication/provincial-gazettes-2016</a></p> <p>The records listed in (b) to (g) are free of charge when downloaded from:  <a href="https://www.westerncape.gov.za/dept/department-premier/documents">https://www.westerncape.gov.za/dept/department-premier/documents</a></p>



**9. DEPARTMENT OF SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT**

DESCRIPTION OF CATEGORIES OF RECORDS AUTOMATICALLY AVAILABLE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1) OF THE PROMOTION OF ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT, 2000	MANNER OF ACCESS TO RECORDS
FOR INSPECTION IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(i)	
<p><b>(A) Directorate: Business Planning and Policy Alignment</b></p> <p>(a) Five-year strategic plan of the Department</p> <p>(b) Annual Performance Plan</p> <p>(c) Annual Report</p> <p>(d) Approved policy documents</p> <p>(e) Generic norms and standards for social welfare services</p>	<p>Copies of the records listed under (A) may be inspected at the Directorate: Business Planning and policy alignment, 14 Queen Victoria Street, Private Bag X9112, Cape Town, 8000</p>
<p><b>(B) Directorate: Research, Population and Knowledge Management</b></p> <p>(a) Social research reports</p> <p>(b) Population and demographic reports</p>	<p>Copies of the records listed under (B) may be inspected at the Directorate: Research, Population and Knowledge Management, 14 Queen Victoria Street, Private Bag X9112, Cape Town, 8000</p>
<p><b>(C) Directorate: Children &amp; Families</b></p> <p>(a) Legislative service standards</p>	<p>Copies of the records listed under (C) may be inspected at the Directorate: Children &amp; Families, 14 Queen Victoria Street, Private Bag X9112, Cape Town, 8000</p>
<p><b>(D) Directorate: Special Programmes</b></p> <p>(a) Legislative and programme specific service standards (substance abuse; older persons and disabilities)</p>	<p>Copies of the records listed under (D) may be inspected at the Directorate: Special Programmes, 14 Queen Victoria Street, Private Bag X9112, Cape Town, 8000</p>
<p><b>(E) Directorate: Social Crime Prevention</b></p> <p>(a) Legislative and Programme specific service standards</p>	<p>Copies of the records listed under (E) and (F) may be inspected at the Directorate: Social Crime Prevention, 14 Queen Victoria Street, Private Bag X9112, Cape Town, 8000</p>
<p><b>(F) Directorate: ECD and Partial Care</b></p> <p>(a) Legislative and Programme specific service standards</p>	<p>Copies of the records listed under (E) and (F) may be inspected at the Directorate: Social Crime Prevention, 14 Queen Victoria Street, Private Bag X9112, Cape Town, 8000</p>

This gazette is also available free online at [www.gpwonline.co.za](http://www.gpwonline.co.za)

<p><b>(C) <u>Directorate: Children &amp; Families</u></b> (a) Legislative service standards</p> <p><b>(D) <u>Directorate: Special Programmes</u></b> (a) Legislative and programme specific service standards (substance abuse; older persons and disabilities)</p> <p><b>(E) <u>Directorate: Social Crime Prevention</u></b> (a) Legislative and Programme specific service standards</p> <p><b>(F) <u>Directorate: ECD and Partial Care</u></b> (a) Legislative and Programme specific service standards</p> <p><b>G) <u>Directorate: Facility Management and Quality Monitoring</u></b> (a) Legislative and Programme specific service standards</p> <p><b>(H) <u>Directorate: Finance</u></b> (a) Annual budget: MTEF (b) Adjustment estimates (c) Revenue and expenditure reports (d) Financial statements (e) Financial delegations document</p>	<p>Street, Private Bag X9112, Cape Town, 8000</p> <p>Copies of the records listed under (C) are available for copying and purchase at the Directorate: Children &amp; Families, 14 Queen Victoria Street, Private Bag X9112, Cape Town, 8000</p> <p>Copies of the records listed under (D) are available for copying and purchase at the Directorate: Special Programmes, 14 Queen Victoria Street, Private Bag X9112, Cape Town, 8000</p> <p>Copies of the records listed under (E) and (F) are available for copying and purchase at the Directorate: Social Crime Prevention, 14 Queen Victoria Street, Private Bag X9112, Cape Town, 8000</p> <p>Copies of records listed under (G) is available for copying and purchase at the Directorate: Facility Management and Quality Monitoring, Private Bag X 1, Old Paarl Road, Kraaifontein, 7570</p> <p>Copies of the records listed under (H) is available for copying and purchase at the Directorate: Finance, 14 Queen Victoria Street Private Bag X9112, Cape Town, 8000</p>
<p><b>AVAILABLE FREE OF CHARGE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(iii)</b></p>	

<p>(a) Five-year strategic plan of the Department</p> <p>(b) Annual Performance Plan</p> <p>(c) Annual Report</p> <p>(d) Approved policy documents</p> <p>(e) Generic norms and standards for social welfare services</p>	<p>These records [(a) to (e)] are available free of charge when downloaded from the Internet at:</p> <p><a href="http://www.westerncape.gov.za/dept/social-development/documents">http://www.westerncape.gov.za/dept/social-development/documents</a></p>
<p>(f) Standard Bidding Documents including General Conditions of Contract</p> <p>(g) Advertised and Awarded Bids/Tender Documents/Files</p> <p>(h) Copy of Departmental Contracts</p> <p>(i) Copy of Departmental Service Level Agreements</p> <p>(j) Supply Chain Management Booklet for Suppliers/Vendors</p> <p>(k) Supply Chain Management Brochure for Supplier / Vendors</p>	<p>These records [(f) to (k)] are available free of charge on written request from the Directorate: Supply Chain Management, 14 Queen Victoria Street, Private Bag X9112, Cape Town, 8000 the</p>

## 10. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORT AND PUBLIC WORKS

DESCRIPTION OF CATEGORIES OF RECORDS AUTOMATICALLY AVAILABLE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1) OF THE PROMOTION OF ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT, 2000	
FOR INSPECTION IN TERMS OF LEGISLATION OTHER THAN THIS ACT: CHAPTER 2 SECTION 15(1) (a) (i) of Act No. 2 of 2000	MANNER OF ACCESS TO RECORDS
<p><b><u>1. ALL BRANCHES</u></b></p> <p>Annual Performance Plan</p> <p>Departmental Strategic Plan</p> <p>Annual Reports</p> <p>Quarterly Performance Reports</p> <p>Citizens Report</p> <p><b><u>2. BRANCH: STRATEGY PLANNING AND CO-ORDINATION</u></b></p> <p><b>(a) Policy and Strategy Integration</b></p> <p>Provincial Public Transport Institutional Framework</p>	<p>The records listed under 1 and 3(a) are available for inspection at the Communication Section, 8th Floor, 9 Dorp Street, Cape Town</p> <p>These records listed under 2(a), (b) and (c) are available for inspection at the Director: Knowledge Management:</p>

<p>Provincial Land Transport Framework Transversal Co-Ordination Framework</p> <p><b>(b)EPWP</b> Departmental Contractor Development Policy Provincial EPWP Policy</p> <p><b>(c)Strategic Management and Operational Support</b> Departmental Skills Development Strategy Security Policy Access Control Policy Performance Monitoring and Evaluation Framework Masakh'iSizwe Bursary Programme Knowledge Management Strategy</p> <p><b><u>3. BRANCH: FINANCE</u></b></p> <p><b>(a) Financial Management</b> Public Service Act and Regulations/Public Finance Management Act (PFMA)</p> <p><b>(b)Supply Chain Management</b> None</p> <p><b><u>4. BRANCH: TRANSPORT MANAGEMENT</u></b></p> <p><b>(a) Road Network Management</b> None</p> <p><b>(b) Transport Operations</b> Public Transport Safety Implementation Programme Public Transport Operations Grant</p> <p><b>(c)Transport Regulation</b> Abnormal Load Applications System Safely Home Programme Conflict Management Action Plan</p> <p><b>(d)Traffic Management</b> Public Transport Safety Implementation Programme Road Safety Strategy</p>	<p>1st Floor, 9 Dorp Street, Cape Town</p> <p>The records listed under 4(b), (c) and (d) is available for inspection at the Director: Knowledge Management: 1st Floor, 9 Dorp Street, Cape Town</p>
--	---

<p><b><u>5. BRANCH PROVINCIAL PUBLIC WORKS</u></b></p> <p><b>(a) General Infrastructure</b> Tenders awarded</p> <p>Jobs stats Scheduled governmental projects Modernisation Policy Modernisation Furniture Policy Property Efficiency Strategy</p> <p><b>(b)Immovable Asset Management</b> Western Cape Land Administration Act,1998(Act 6 of 1998)</p> <p>Provincial Maintenance Strategy Acquisitions and Lease-in Strategy GIAMA Implementation Strategy Disposal Strategy for Property Assets</p> <p><b>(c) Education Infrastructure</b> None</p> <p><b>(d) Provincial PPP</b> Better Living Model Exemplar Project</p>	<p>This record is available for inspection at the Walk-in-centre, 9 Dorp Street, Cape Town</p> <p>The remainder of the records under 5(a) are available for inspection at the Director: Knowledge Management: 1st Floor, 9 Dorp Street, Cape Town</p> <p>This record is available at Head office 4<sup>th</sup> Floor, 9 Dorp Street, Cape Town</p> <p>The remainder of the records under 5(b) and 5(d) are available for inspection at the Director: Knowledge Management, 1st Floor, 9 Dorp Street, Cape Town</p>
<p align="center"><b>FOR COPYING OR PURCHASING IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(ii)</b></p>	
<p><b><u>1. ALL BRANCHES</u></b> Annual Performance Plan Departmental Strategic Plan Annual Reports Quarterly Performance Reports Citizens Report</p> <p><b><u>2. BRANCH: STRATEGY PLANNING AND CO-ORDINATION</u></b> <b>(a) Policy and Strategy Integration</b> Provincial Public Transport Institutional Framework</p>	<p>The records listed under 1 and 3(a) are available for copying and purchase at the Communication Section, 8th Floor, 9 Dorp Street, Cape Town</p> <p>The records listed under 2(a), (b) and (c) are available for copying and</p>

This gazette is also available free online at [www.gpwnonline.co.za](http://www.gpwnonline.co.za)



<p><b>(a) General Infrastructure</b></p> <p>Tenders awarded</p>     <p>Jobs stats</p> <p>Scheduled governmental projects</p> <p>Modernisation Policy</p> <p>Modernisation Furniture Policy</p> <p>Property Efficiency Strategy</p> <p><b>(b) Immovable Asset Management</b></p> <p>Western Cape Land Administration Act, 1998 (Act 6 of 1998)</p>     <p>Provincial Maintenance Strategy</p> <p>Acquisitions and Lease-in Strategy</p> <p>GIAMA Implementation Strategy</p> <p>Disposal Strategy for Property Assets</p>   <p><b>(b) Education Infrastructure</b></p> <p>None</p> <p><b>(c) Provincial PPP</b></p> <p>Better Living Model Exemplar Project</p>	<p>This record is available for inspection at the Walk-in-centre, 9 Dorp Street, Cape Town</p>     <p>The remainder of the records under 5(a) are available for inspection at the Director: Knowledge Management: 1st Floor, 9 Dorp Street, Cape Town</p>     <p>This record is available at Head office 4<sup>th</sup> Floor, 9 Dorp Street, Cape Town</p>     <p>The remainder of the records under 5(b) and 5(d) are available for inspection at the Director: Knowledge Management, 1st Floor, 9 Dorp Street, Cape Town</p>
<p><b>AVAILABLE FREE OF CHARGE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(iii)</b></p>	
<p>Information on the following subjects is available without formal request on the department's website and brochures:</p> <p>Brochures</p> <p>Annual report</p> <p>Strategic Plan</p> <p>General information</p> <p>Commercial issues</p> <p>Operations</p> <p>Services rendered</p> <p>Environment</p> <p>Education</p>	<p>These records are free of charge when downloaded from the Department's website: <a href="http://www.westerncape.gov.za">www.westerncape.gov.za</a></p> <p>Or at the Communication Section: 8<sup>th</sup> Floor, 9 Dorp Street, Cape Town.</p>

Community Work Investor Relations Media relations Press releases Publications Site maps	
--	--

# 11. PROVINCIAL TREASURY

DESCRIPTION OF CATEGORIES OF RECORDS AUTOMATICALLY AVAILABLE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1) OF THE PROMOTION OF ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT, 2000	MANNER OF ACCESS TO RECORDS
FOR INSPECTION IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(i)	
(a) Provincial Budget (Main and Adjusted Estimates) (b) Explanatory memorandum to the Provincial Budget (Main and Adjusted Estimates) (c) Western Cape Medium Term Budget Policy Statement (WC MTBPS) (d) Provincial Economic Review and Outlook (PERO) (e) Municipal Economic Review and Outlook (MERO) (f) Reports per Department resulting from the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999) and the Division of Revenue Act (DORA) (g) Treasury circulars and other relevant policy documents (h) Supply Chain Management Delegation (i) Financial Delegation (j) Tender documents (advertised tenders) (k) Service Charter (l) Strategic Plans (m) Annual Performance Plans (n) Annual Reports	Records referred to in (a) to (n) may be inspected at the Department located on the third floor of the Legislature Building, Cape Town between 07:30 and 16:00.
FOR COPYING OR PURCHASING IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(ii)	
(a) Provincial Budget (Main and Adjusted Estimates) (b) Explanatory memorandum to the Provincial Budget (Main and Adjusted Estimates) (c) Western Cape Medium Term Budget Policy Statement (WC MTBPS) (d) Provincial Economic Review and Outlook (PERO) (e) Municipal Economic Review and Outlook (MERO)	Records referred to in (a) to (n) are available for copying and purchasing from the Department located on the third floor of the Legislature Building, Cape Town upon payment of the prescribed fee - between 07:30 and 16:00.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(f) Reports per Department resulting from the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999) and the Division of Revenue Act (DORA)</li> <li>(g) Treasury circulars and other relevant policy documents</li> <li>(h) Supply Chain Management Delegation</li> <li>(i) Financial Delegation</li> <li>(j) Tender documents (advertised tenders)</li> <li>(k) Service Charter</li> <li>(l) Strategic Plans</li> <li>(m) Annual Performance Plans</li> <li>(n) Annual Reports</li> </ul>	
<b>AVAILABLE FREE OF CHARGE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(iii)</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Provincial Budget (Main and Adjusted Estimates)</li> <li>(b) Explanatory memorandum to the Provincial Budget (Main and Adjusted Estimates)</li> <li>(c) Western Cape Medium Term Budget Policy Statement (WC MTBPS)</li> <li>(d) Provincial Economic Review and Outlook (PERO)</li> <li>(e) Municipal Economic Review and Outlook (MERO)</li> <li>(f) Reports per Department resulting from the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999) and the Division of Revenue Act (DORA)</li> <li>(g) Treasury circulars and other relevant policy documents</li> <li>(h) Supply Chain Management Delegation</li> <li>(i) Financial Delegation</li> <li>(j) Tender documents (advertised tenders)</li> <li>(k) Service Charter</li> <li>(l) Strategic Plans</li> <li>(m) Annual Performance Plans</li> <li>(n) Annual Reports</li> </ul>	These records are available for download, free of charge from the WCG portal at: <a href="http://www.westerncape.gov.za">www.westerncape.gov.za</a>

## 12. WESTERN CAPE EDUCATION DEPARTMENT

DESCRIPTION OF CATEGORIES OF RECORDS AUTOMATICALLY AVAILABLE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1) OF THE PROMOTION OF ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT, 2000	MANNER OF ACCESS TO RECORDS
<b>FOR INSPECTION IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(i)</b>	

<p>(a) LOGIS annual statements and reports</p> <p>(b) Tender documents and quotations</p> <p>(c) SourceLink documents - advertisements</p> <p>(d) Tender documents</p> <p>(e) Tender Bulletins</p> <p>(f) Remittance register</p> <p>(g) Files (excluding confidential and personal information)</p> <p>(h) WCED circulars and minutes</p> <p>(i) Employment equity plan</p> <p>(j) Training records</p> <p>(k) Financial records of expenditure</p>	<p>These records are available for inspection at the Directorate: Supply Chain Management, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Cape Town between 08:00 and 15:45</p> <p>These records are available for inspection at the Directorate: Knowledge and Information Management (General Registry), Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Cape Town between 08:00 and 15:45</p> <p>These records are available for inspection at the Directorate: Strategic People Management, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Cape Town between 08:00 and 15:45</p> <p>These records are available for inspection at the Directorate: Management Accounting, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Cape Town – between 08:00 and 15:45</p>
<b>FOR COPYING OR PURCHASING IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(ii)</b>	
<p>(a) Inspection reports (could be requested by institution that has been inspected)</p>	<p>Copies of these records may be obtained, on payment of the prescribed fee, from the Directorate: Financial Accounting, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p>

<p>(b) Schedules of amounts that have been deducted from an individual's salaries and paid over to outside organisations (Only the personal and organisations concerned may request it.)</p>	<p>Copies of these records may be obtained, on payment of the prescribed fee, from the Directorate: Examinations Administration, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p>
<p>(c) Curriculum Policy Statements</p>	<p>Copies of these records may be obtained, on payment of the prescribed fee, from the Directorate: Curriculum GET and FET, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p>
<p>(d) Manuals on school matters (e) Information on boarding and transport bursaries</p>	<p>Copies of these records may be obtained, on payment of the prescribed fee, from the Directorate: Institution Management and Governance Planning (including Safe Schools), Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p>
<p>(f) Workplace skills plan (g) Equity plan</p>	<p>Copies of these records may be obtained, on payment of the prescribed fee, from the Directorate: Strategic People Management, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p>
<p>(h) Course material</p>	<p>Copies of these records may be obtained, on payment of the prescribed fee, from the Cape Teaching and Leadership Institute, (CTLI) Private Bag X14, Kuilsriver 7580</p>
<p>(i) Annual reports (WCED) (j) Child abuse policy and protocol (k) Summary of child abuse</p>	<p>Copies of these records may be obtained, on payment of the prescribed fee, from the Directorate: Communication, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p>
<p>(l) Policy documents (WCED)</p>	<p>Copies of these records may be obtained, on payment of the prescribed fee, from the Directorate: Policy Co-ordination, Grand Central</p>

<p>(m) Vacancy lists</p> <p>(n) Establishments/Organograms of WCED educational institutions and offices</p> <p>(o) Edumedia catalogue</p> <p>(p) Edulis catalogues</p> <p>(q) Educational video material</p> <p>(r) Home schooling information</p> <p>(s) Assessment policy</p>	<p>Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p> <p>Copies of these records may be obtained, on payment of the prescribed fee, from the Directorate: Recruitment and Selection, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p> <p>Copies of these records may be obtained, on payment of the prescribed fee, from the Directorate: Communications, Edumedia, 3 Station Road, Mowbray</p> <p>Copies of these records may be obtained, on payment of the prescribed fee, from the Directorate Institutional Resources Support (including Library Service), Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p> <p>Copies of these records may be obtained, on payment of the prescribed fee, from the Directorate: Curriculum GET (including eLearning), Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p> <p>Copies of these records may be obtained, on payment of the prescribed fee, from the Directorate: Institution Management and Governance Planning (including Safe Schools), Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p> <p>Copies of these records may be obtained, on payment of the prescribed fee, from the Directorate: Assessment Management, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p>
---	---

**AVAILABLE FREE OF CHARGE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(iii)**



<p>(m) Expenses of learner support material</p> <p>(n) List of WCED telephone numbers</p> <p>(o) Reports of losses with regard to burglaries, fires and vandalism at institutions</p>	<p>Copies of these records are available free of charge from the Directorate: Institutional Resource Support, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p>
<p>(p) Payment data on municipal services provided to schools established in terms of section 21 of the South African Schools Act, 1996 (Act 84 of 1996)</p>	<p>Copies of these records are available free of charge from the Directorate: Management Accounting, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p>
<p>(q) Information on schools for learners with special educational needs</p> <p>(r) Specialised learner and educator support (including school clinics): contact numbers</p>	<p>Copies of these records are available free of charge from the Directorate: Specialised Education, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p>
<p>(s) Gender equity pamphlets</p> <p>(t) Gender equity posters</p> <p>(u) Diversity posters</p> <p>(v) Anti-violence posters</p> <p>(w) Human resource development newsletter</p> <p>(x) Employment equity advocacy material</p>	<p>Copies of these records are available free of charge from the Directorate: Strategic People Management, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p>
<p>(y) Manual: Maintenance of buildings and sites</p> <p>(z) Scheduled maintenance</p> <p>(aa) Capital works</p>	<p>Copies of these records are available free of charge from the Directorate: Infrastructure Planning and Development, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p>
<p>(bb) Appointment of employees (educators and public servants) (excluding confidential and personal information)</p>	<p>Copies of these records are available free of charge from the Directorate: Recruitment and Selection, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town</p>
<p>(cc) Retirement of employees</p> <p>(dd) Conditions of service and benefits of employees</p>	<p>Copies of these records are available free of charge from the Directorate: Service Benefits,</p>

(ee) Resolutions of bargaining councils	Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town
(ff) Information about leave (Only the persons and organisations that have an interest may request it)	
(gg) Promotion requirements	
(hh) Resolutions of bargaining councils	Copies of these records are available free of charge from the Directorate: Employee Relations, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town
(ii) Promotion requirements	Copies of these records are available free of charge from the Directorate: Recruitment and Selection, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town
(jj) Senior Certificate requirements	Copies of these records are available free of charge from the Directorate: Examinations Administration, Grand Central Towers, Lower Parliament Street, Private Bag X9114, Cape Town
(kk) General Education & Training certificate information	
(ll) Adult Education and Training policy and procedures (AET)	Copies of these records are available free of charge from the Department of Higher Education and Training, Sanlam Building, Golden Acre, Cape Town
(mm) List of WCED schools for purpose of finding placement.	This information is obtainable by accessing the Find-A-School Webpage at
(nn) List of schools listed by subject offerings.	<a href="https://wcedemis.westerncape.gov.za/wced/finda">https://wcedemis.westerncape.gov.za/wced/finda</a>
(oo) Mailing list for all educational institutions registered with the WCED	<a href="https://wcedemis.westerncape.gov.za/wced/finda">school.html</a>
(pp) Information on the progress of an application to any public schools registered with the WCED	

**13. WESTERN CAPE DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH**

<b>DESCRIPTION OF CATEGORIES OF RECORDS AUTOMATICALLY AVAILABLE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1) OF THE PROMOTION OF ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT, 2000</b>	<b>MANNER OF ACCESS TO RECORDS</b>
<b>FOR INSPECTION IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(i)</b>	
<p>(a) Medical records for purposes of on-going medical care. (Medical record: this term is used interchangeable with "clinical record" and refers to any document or record in any form whatsoever, which accumulates in the course of patient care, but excludes documents compiled in response to litigation or pending litigation.)</p> <p>This excludes medical records of psychiatric patients (available in terms of section 30 of the Promotion of Access to Information Act).</p> <p>(b) Medical records will be made automatically available to patients, their legal guardians, or an appointed legal representative only after producing proof of written permission signed by the patient. No information will be given to any other third party.</p>	<p>These records may be inspected at the Deputy Information Officer for the Western Cape Department of Health 4 Dorp Street / Private Bag 2060 Cape Town</p>
<b>FOR COPYING OR PURCHASING IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(ii)</b>	
<p>a) Medical records for purposes of on-going medical care. (Medical record: this term is used interchangeable with "clinical record" and refers to any document or record in any form whatsoever, which accumulates in the course of patient care, but excludes documents compiled in response to litigation or pending litigation.)</p> <p>This excludes medical records of psychiatric patients (available in terms of section 30 of the Promotion of Access to Information Act).</p> <p>(b) Medical records will be made automatically available to patients, their legal guardians, or an appointed legal representative only after producing proof of written permission signed by the patient. No information will be given to any other third party.</p>	<p>These records are available for copying and purchasing, after payment of the prescribed fee, at the Deputy Information Officer for the Western Cape Department of Health 4 Dorp Street / Private Bag 2060 Cape Town</p>

**AVAILABLE FREE OF CHARGE IN TERMS OF SECTION 15(1)(a)(iii)**

All health-related publications including plans, reports, booklets, pamphlets and brochures made available to and by the provincial Health Department expressly for free public distribution

These records are available for download from the WCG portal at [www.westerncape.gov.za/dept/health](http://www.westerncape.gov.za/dept/health) or on request to the Deputy Information Officer

**DEPARTMENT OF LABOUR  
NOTICE 638 OF 2019**

**COMPENSATION FOR OCCUPATIONAL INJURIES AND DISEASES ACT, 1993  
(ACT No. 130 OF 1993), AS AMENDED**

**DATA CLEANSING ON ALL ACTIVE PENSIONS IN THE COMPENSATION FUND**

I, Vuyo Mafata, the Commissioner for the Compensation Fund, hereby issue a notice in terms of section 6A of the COID Act to inform all the pensioners who are currently receiving a monthly pension from the Fund that the Fund is embarking on a process to cleanse pensions data from the 1<sup>st</sup> September 2019. The process will assist the Fund to identify and eliminate fraudulent/invalid pensions as well as to improve the integrity of pension's data.

This notice will affect injured employees who receive a pension from the Fund because of disability as well as dependents of deceased pensioners. The notice applies to pensioners who reside in South Africa as well as those outside South Africa.

The cleansing of pensions data is with regard to the following:

1. Validating the identity of the pensioners and dependents of deceased employees.
2. Verifying the life of the pensioners and dependents of deceased employees.
3. Verifying the marital status of children who are receiving pensions from the CF.
4. Banking details will also be verified to confirm that they belong to the correct pensioner or dependent.

5. Terminating pensions after verification for all individuals who cannot be verified, those who are deceased, beneficiaries with no identification number, children who are married, beneficiaries with no identification number, children above the age of 18 years who have not submitted supporting documents to prove that they are studying as well as all invalid pensions.

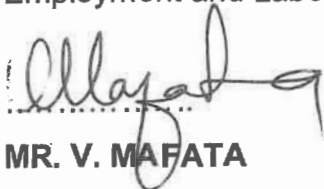
The Fund will inform the pensioners who will be terminated about the decision to terminate the pension as well as the reasons for the termination. The correspondence will be sent to the available postal address that was submitted by the pensioner to the Fund.

The pensioners are hereby called upon to update their information with the Fund to avoid termination.

The following information must be updated: Certified copy of identity document or passport of the injured employee and dependents

1. Certified copy of the death certificate of the deceased employee/ dependent
2. Certified copy marriage certificate
3. Unabridged birth certificate for children below the age of 18 years
4. Birth certificate in the approved format for non-South African citizens
5. Proof of active banking details
6. Recent proof of residence

The information to support a pension should be submitted to any Department of Employment and Labour Office or via email to [PensionCleansing@LABOUR.gov.za](mailto:PensionCleansing@LABOUR.gov.za)



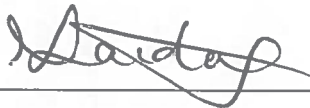
**MR. V. MAFATA**

**COMMISSIONER: COMPENSATION FUND**

**SOUTH AFRICAN RESERVE BANK  
NOTICE 639 OF 2019**

**Exemption of Intermediaries Guarantee Facility Limited from the prudential requirements of the Insurance Act No 18 of 2017**

Under section 13(b) of schedule 3 of the Insurance Act, No 18 of 2017 (Insurance Act), I, Kuben Naidoo, Chief Executive Officer of the Prudential Authority, hereby exempt retrospectively, with effect from 28 September 2018 to 31 March 2019, Intermediaries Guarantee Facility Limited from compliance with Chapter 5, 6 and 7 of the Insurance Act.



**Kuben Naidoo  
CEO: PRUDENTIAL AUTHORITY**



**Date**

**SOUTH AFRICAN RESERVE BANK  
NOTICE 640 OF 2019**

**THE BANKS ACT, 1990 (ACT NO. 94 OF 1990 – “THE BANKS ACT”)**

**WITHDRAWAL OF CONSENT GRANTED IN TERMS OF SECTION 34 OF THE BANKS ACT TO MAINTAIN A REPRESENTATIVE OFFICE OF A FOREIGN INSTITUTION IN THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA: ZENITH BANK PLC**

Notice is hereby given, for general information, that the consent granted to Zenith Bank Plc, by the erstwhile Registrar of Banks, to maintain a representative office of a foreign institution in the Republic of South Africa was withdrawn with effect from 11 November 2019.



**SOUTH AFRICAN RESERVE BANK****NOTICE 641 OF 2019****THE BANKS ACT, 1990 (ACT NO. 94 OF 1990 – “THE BANKS ACT”)****REGISTRATION – BANK OF COMMUNICATIONS CO. LIMITED JOHANNESBURG BRANCH**

Notice is hereby given, for general information, in accordance with the provisions of section 30 of the Banks Act, that Bank of Communications Co. Limited Johannesburg Branch was authorised by the Prudential Authority (formerly the Office of the Registrar of Banks) to conduct the business of a bank by means of a branch in the Republic of South Africa in terms of section 18A of the Banks Act with effect from 17 October 2019. Bank of Communications Co. Limited is an established bank in the People's Republic of China.

---

**BOARD NOTICES • RAADSKENNISGEWINGS**

---

**BOARD NOTICE 198 OF 2019****THE INDEPENDENT REGULATORY BOARD FOR AUDITORS****NOTICE TO WITHDRAW THE PUBLICATION OF BOARD NOTICE 144 OF 2017 AND BOARD NOTICE 98 OF 2018**

The Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors hereby withdraws the following publications:

1. "Notice of proposed amendment to the Disciplinary Rules of the Auditing Professions Act, 2005 (Act 26 of 2005)" and the Disciplinary Rules attached thereunder, published under Board Notice 144 of 2017 in Government Gazette No. 41064, dated 25 August 2017; and
2. "Notice of request for public comments on the amendment to the disciplinary rules made under the Auditing Professions Act, 2005 (Act 26 of 2005)" and the Disciplinary Rules attached thereunder, published under Board Notice 98 of 2018 in Government Gazette No. 41870, dated 31 August 2018.

The withdrawal is due to procedural and administrative errors surrounding both notices.

The Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors confirms that the Disciplinary Rules duly published under Board Notice 69 of 2007 in Government Gazette No. 30004 dated 29 June 2007 and available on its website: [www.irba.co.za](http://www.irba.co.za) remain in full force and effect until amended.


**Bernard Peter Agulhas**

**Chief Executive Officer**

**BOARD NOTICE 199 OF 2019****FINANCIAL SECTOR CONDUCT AUTHORITY****FINANCIAL MARKETS ACT, 2012****APPROVED AMENDMENTS TO THE JSE DERIVATIVES RULES – PHYSICAL  
DELIVERY**

The Financial Sector Conduct Authority (FSCA) hereby gives notice under section 71(3)(c)(ii) of the Financial Markets Act, 2012 (Act no. 19 of 2012) that the amendments to the JSE Directives Rules have been approved. Please be advised that the rules have been published on the official website of FSCA ([www.fsc.co.za](http://www.fsc.co.za)) and the website of JSE ([www.jse.co.za](http://www.jse.co.za)).

The amendments come into operation on date of publication.



**J. A. BOYD**

**FINANCIAL SECTOR CONDUCT AUTHORITY**

## Annexure A

## APPROVED AMENDMENTS TO THE JSE DERIVATIVES RULES

General explanatory notes:

1. Words underlined with a solid line (\_\_\_\_) indicate the insertions in the existing rules and directives
2. Words in bold and in square brackets ([ ]) indicate deletions from the existing rules

Approved amendments to the JSE Derivatives rules:

## 7.170 Rules of trading that are particular to [the] physical delivery [of agricultural products]

- 7.170.1 The contract specification of **[an agricultural]** commodity derivatives futures contracts may provide for performance by means of physical delivery and may set out the conditions and terms under which physical delivery shall be effected.
- 7.170.2 The JSE may issue directives in respect of delivery procedures, settlement and delivery agents, delivery locations, inspections of **[agricultural products]** commodities sold and delivered and other matters relating to trading in commodity **[agricultural]** derivatives and may appoint settlement agents on such terms as it may deem fit to facilitate performance of commodity **[agricultural]** derivatives.
- 7.170.3 Unless otherwise specified in the contract, the holder of every short position in **[an agricultural]** a commodity derivatives futures contract shall on expiry have an obligation to make delivery of the underlying **[agricultural product]** commodity at the expiry price, and the holder of every long position on expiry shall have an obligation to take delivery of the underlying **[agricultural product]** commodity at the expiry price.
- 7.170.4 JSE Clear shall, unless otherwise specified in the contract specification, have the sole discretion in allocating delivery to long position holders.
- 7.170.5 In the event of a default by a party to **[an agricultural]** a commodity derivatives futures contract, the contract may be closed out by the non-defaulting party by booking the quantity in default back to the defaulting party at a market price determined by the JSE.

---

7.170 amended with effect from 24 December 2008.

7.170.1 amended with effect from 24 December 2008.

7.170.2 amended with effect from 24 December 2008.

7.170.3 amended with effect from 24 December 2008.

7.170.5 amended with effect from 24 December 2008.





Printed by and obtainable from the Government Printer, Bosman Street, Private Bag X85, Pretoria, 0001  
Contact Centre Tel: 012-748 6200. eMail: [info.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:info.egazette@gpw.gov.za)  
Publications: Tel: (012) 748 6053, 748 6061, 748 6065